

## **AVCOMM Technologies Inc.**

## 7028GX12 Industrial Ethernet Managed Switch

## **User Manual**

**Copyright Notice** © AVCOMM. All rights reserved.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



## Contents

| 1 Summary                                      | 4  |
|------------------------------------------------|----|
| 2 Login the Web Page                           | 6  |
| 2.1 Login the Web network management client    | 6  |
| 2.2 Client interface composition               |    |
| 2.3 Web interface navigation tree              |    |
| 3 System manage                                |    |
| 3.1 System information                         |    |
| 3.1.1Interface description                     |    |
| 3.1.2Explanations                              |    |
| 3.1.3Operation steps                           |    |
| 3.2 User management                            |    |
| 3.2.1Interface description                     |    |
| 3.2.2Explanations                              |    |
| ·                                              |    |
| 3.2.3Operation steps                           |    |
| 3.3 Configuration Management                   |    |
| 3.3.1 Management file                          |    |
| 3.3.2 The start config                         |    |
| 3.3.3 Management file                          |    |
| 3.4 Access config                              |    |
| 3.4.1 Telnet config                            |    |
| 3.4.2 HTTPS config                             |    |
| 3.5 SNMP config                                | 16 |
| 4 Interface manage                             | 19 |
| 4.1 Port management                            | 19 |
| 4.2 Storm control                              | 20 |
| 4.3 Port rate-limit                            | 21 |
| 4.4 Mirror                                     | 22 |
| 4.5 Link Aggregation                           | 24 |
| 4.5.1 Introduction                             | 24 |
| 4.5.2 Static link-aggr                         | 25 |
| 4.5.3 Add dynamic link aggregation             |    |
| 4.6 Isolated-port config                       |    |
| 4.7 Port statistics                            |    |
| 4.7.1 Interface description                    |    |
| 4.7.2 Detail port stats                        |    |
| 5 Business manage                              |    |
| 5 JUSTICES manage                              |    |
| 5.1.1 VLAN apply                               |    |
| 5.1.2 Port config                              |    |
| 5.1.3 MAC-VLAN                                 |    |
| 5.1.4 Protocol-VLAN                            |    |
| 5.2 MAC config                                 |    |
|                                                |    |
| 5.2.1 MAC config                               |    |
| 5.2.2 Static MAC                               |    |
| 5.2.3 MAC List                                 |    |
| 5.3 MSTP config                                |    |
| 5.3.1 Global config                            |    |
| 5.3.2 Inst-port config                         |    |
| 5.3.3 Port config                              |    |
| 5.4 ERPS config                                |    |
| 5.4.1 ERPS configuration information displayed |    |
| 5.4.2 Add ERPS                                 | 59 |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



| 5.6.3 GROUP config       68         5.6.4 VLAN config       68         5.7 MLD-Snooping       69         5.7.1 MLD Snooping Principle       69         5.7.2 MLD Snooping Basic Concept       70         5.7.3 MLD Snooping Working mechanism       71         5.7.4 MLD-Snooping Configuration       73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       73         5.7.6 group list       74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.7.7 Static Multicast       73         5.7.6 group list       74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.8.1 QOS Global config       77         5.8.2 QOS port config       78         5.9.1 LDP config       78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.0 LLDP config       80         5.9.1 LDP config       80         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       80         5.10 UDLD config       81         5.110 UDLD c                                                   | 5.5 A-Ring config |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| 5.6 12-mcast config       65         5.6.1 GMP-snooping config       66         5.6.2 Static multicast       67         5.6.3 GROUP config       68         5.6.4 VLAN config       68         5.6.4 VLAN config       69         5.7.1 MLD-Snooping Principle       69         5.7.2 MLD Snooping Working mechanism       71         5.7.3 MLD Snooping Vorking mechanism       71         5.7.4 MLD-Snooping Configuration       73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       73         5.7.5 Copy Dist       74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.8.1 QOS Config       77         5.8.2 QOS port config       78         5.9.1 Working Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.2 Sorting Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 LIDP config       81         5.10 UDL config       81         5.11 Dorchig       81         5.11 Dorchig       82         5.12 DHCP config       82         5.12 DHCP server config                                                               |                   |  |
| 5.6.1 (GMP-snopping config.         66           5.6.2 Static multicast         67           5.6.3 GROUP config.         68           5.6.4 VLAN config.         68           5.7 MLD-Snooping Principle         69           5.7.1 MLD Snooping Basic Concept.         70           5.7.3 MLD Snooping Configuration.         71           5.7.4 MLD-Snooping Configuration.         73           5.7.5 Group list         74           5.7.7 A MLD-Snooping Configuration.         73           5.7.5 Katic Multicast         73           5.7.5 Katic Multicast         73           5.7.7 KAN Setting.         74           5.7.7 VAN Setting.         74           5.8.1 QOS Global config.         77           5.8.1 QOS Config.         78           5.9.1 UDP config.         78           5.9.2 Solo port config.         78           5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message         79           5.9.4 LLDP global config.         79           5.9.5 Port config.         81           5.10 UDL config.         81           5.10 UDL config.         81           5.11 UDP reglobal config.         82           5.12 DIPC Prever config.         82           5.12 DIPC Pr        |                   |  |
| 5.6.2 Static multicast         67           5.6.3 GROUP config         68           5.7 MLD Snooping Principle         69           5.7.1 MLD Snooping Principle         69           5.7.2 MLD Snooping Basic Concept.         70           5.7.3 MLD Snooping Configuration         71           5.7.4 MLD Snooping Configuration         73           5.7.5 Static Multicast         73           5.7.5 Static Multicast         73           5.7.7 VLAN Setting         74           5.7.7 VLAN Setting         74           5.8.1 QOS colobal config         77           5.8.1 QOS colobal config         78           5.9.1 LDP config         78           5.9.1 UDP config         78           5.9.1 UDP config         78           5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message         79           5.9.3 Autor config         79           5.9.4 LLDP global config         79           5.9.4 LLDP global config         79           5.9.5 LLDP config         80           5.9.6 LLDP neighbors         81           5.10 UDL config         82           5.12 J DHCP Bool config         82           5.12 J LIDP (Paddress allocation         82           5.12.4 Static cient        |                   |  |
| 5.6.3 GROUP config         68           5.6 4 VLAN config         68           5.7 MID-Snooping Principle         69           5.7.1 MID Snooping Basic Concept         70           5.7.3 MID Snooping Basic Concept         70           5.7.3 MID Snooping Basic Concept         73           5.7.5 Static Multicast         73           5.7.5 Static Multicast         73           5.7.6 group list         74           5.7.7 MLD Scoting         74           5.7.7 Static Multicast         73           5.7.6 group list         74           5.7.7 Static Multicast         73           5.7.7 Static Multicast         74           5.8.10 QS Global config         75           5.8.1 QOS port config         78           5.9.1 UD config         78           5.9.1 UD config         78           5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LUDP Message         79           5.9.3 Port config         81           5.10 UDL config         81           5.10 UDL config         81           5.10 UDL proliphors         81           5.12 DHCP Patdress allocation         82           5.12 Atstic client config         83           5.12 Atstic client config         83 <td></td> <td></td> |                   |  |
| 5.64 VLAN config.       68         5.7 MLD-Snooping Principle       69         5.7.1 MLD Snooping Working mechanism       70         5.7.3 MLD Snooping Working mechanism       71         5.7.4 MLD-Snooping Configuration       73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       73         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.8.1 QOS Global config       77         5.8.2 QOS port config       78         5.9.1 LDP config       78         5.9.1 UDP config       78         5.9.1 UDP config       78         5.9.2 Song Mode of LLDP       78         5.9.3 Norking Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.4 LLDP plobal config       79         5.9.4 LLDP plobal config       79         5.9.4 LLDP plobal config       80         5.10 UDLD config       81         5.10 UDLD config       81         5.11 Uhr.4 hap config       82         5.12 JDHCP Pool config       82         5.12 JDHCP Pool config       83         5.12 JDHCP Pool config       83         5.12 JLAR Preofig       87                                                                      |                   |  |
| 5.7 MLD-Snooping                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                   |  |
| 5.7.1 MLD Snooping Principle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                   |  |
| 5.7.2 MLD Snooping Basic Concept.       .70         5.7.3 MLD Snooping Working mechanism       .71         5.7.4 MLD Snooping Configuration       .73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       .73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       .73         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       .74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       .74         5.8.2 QOS config       .77         5.8.2 QOS port config       .77         5.9 LLDP config       .78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP       .78         5.9.1 Working Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       .81         5.10 UDL config       .81         5.10 UDL config       .81         5.10 UDL config       .81         5.11 UHCP IP address allocation       .82         5.12 2 DHCP Server config       .83         5.12 1 DHCP Server config       .83         5.12 3 Port bind       .87         5.12 4 Static client config       .83         5.12 3 Port bind       .87         5.12 3 Port bind       .87         5.12 4 Static client config       .87                                         |                   |  |
| 5.7.3 MLD Snooping Working mechanism       .71         5.7.4 MLD-Snooping Configuration       .73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       .73         5.7.6 group list       .74         7.4 NLD Setting       .74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       .74         5.8 QOS config       .75         5.8.1 QOS port config       .78         5.9 LLDP config       .78         5.9 LLDP config       .78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP       .78         5.9.2 Scanding Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       .79         5.9.5 Port config       .80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       .81         5.10 UDL config       .81         5.10 UDL config       .82         5.12 DHCP Server config       .82         5.12.1 DHCP Paddress allocation       .82         5.12.2 DHCP Pool config       .83         5.12.3 Det bind       .83         5.12.4 Static client config       .82         5.12.5 Leases list       .87         6.3 Static config       .83         6.4 RIP config       .92         6.5 OSPF config       .92                                                                   |                   |  |
| 5.7.4 MLD-Snooping Configuration       73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       73         5.7.5 Static Multicast       74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       74         5.8 QOS config       75         5.8 LQDS Global config       77         5.8 LQDS Global config       78         5.9 LLDP config       78         5.9 LLDP config       78         5.9 LLDP config       78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP Message       79         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       80         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.10 UDL config       81         5.10 UDL config       82         5.12 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12 DHCP Pool config       82         5.12 JDHCP IP address allocation       83         5.12 JDHCP IP address allocation       83         5.12 JDHCP IP address allocation       83         5.12 JDHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12 JDHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12 SPort bind       83         5.12 SPT bind       83         6.1 VRP repaid                                                    |                   |  |
| 5.7.5 Static Multicast.       .73         5.7.5 fearon plist       .74         5.7.6 group list       .74         5.7.6 group list       .74         5.8.1 QOS Global config       .75         5.8.1 QOS Global config       .77         5.2 QOS port config       .78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP       .78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.4 LDP global config       .79         5.9.5 Port config       .80         5.0.1 UDP global config       .80         5.0.4 LDP neighbors       .81         5.10 UDL config       .81         5.11 Link-flap config       .82         5.12 DHCP Server config       .82         5.12.2 DHCP Pool config       .83         5.12.3 Lott clent config       .83         5.12.4 Static clent config       .86         5.12.4 Static clent config       .87         6 Route manage       .87         6 J.3 Interface config       .89         6.4 RIP config       .92         6.5 OSPF config       .93         6.5 OSPF config       .93         6.6.1 VRRP config       .93     <                                                                 |                   |  |
| 5.7.6 group list       .74         5.7.7 VLAN Setting       .74         5.8.0 Co. Gnifg       .75         5.8.1 QOS Global config       .77         5.8.2 QOS port config       .78         5.9.1 LUP Config       .78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Exceiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Exceiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Fort config       .79         5.9.5 Port config       .80         5.9.6 UDD config       .80         5.10 UDLD config       .81         5.10 UDLD config       .81         5.11 Link-flap config       .82         5.12 DHCP Pladdress allocation       .82         5.12.1 DHCP Pladdress allocation       .82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       .83         5.12.4 Static client config       .86         5.12.5 Leases list       .87         6.3 Static config       .87         6.3 Static config       .93         6.4 RIP config       .93         6.5 1 OSPF global config       .93         6.5 1 VRP roonfig       .93         6.6 3 VRP roonfig       .93         6.7 1 Stow ARP       .93                                                                     |                   |  |
| 5.7.7 UAN Setting       .74         5.8 QOS config       .75         5.8.2 QOS port config       .77         5.8.2 QOS port config       .78         5.9 LDP config       .78         5.9.1 LDP config       .78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.4 LDP global config       .79         5.9.5 Port config       .80         5.10 UDD config       .81         5.10 UDD config       .81         5.10 UDD Config       .82         5.12.1 DHCP paddress allocation       .82         5.12.2 DHCP Server config       .82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       .83         5.12.2 DHCP opol config       .83         5.12.3 Port bind       .85         5.12.4 Static client config       .86         5.12.4 Static client config       .87         6.1 L3 interface config       .87         6.2 Show route       .88         6.3 Static config       .92         6.4.1 RIP global config       .92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       .92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       .92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       .93 <td></td> <td></td>                                           |                   |  |
| 5.8 QOS config       75         5.8.1 QOS Global config       77         5.8.2 QOS port config       78         5.9 LLDP config       78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP       78         5.9.2 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDLD config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDLD config       82         5.12 DHCP Part config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       83         5.12 DHCP Pool config       83         5.12 JDHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12 DHCP pool config       83         5.12 L DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12 A Static client config       86         5.12 L DHCP IP address allocation       87         5.12 DHCP pool config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       81         6.3 Static config       92         6.4 I RP global config       92         6.5 LOSPE global config       92<                                                            |                   |  |
| 5.8.1 QOS Global config       .77         5.8.2 QOS port config       .78         5.9 LLDP config       .78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP.       .78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.3 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       .79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       .79         5.9.5 Port config       .80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       .81         5.10 UDLD config       .81         5.11 Link-flap config       .82         5.12 DHCP Server config       .82         5.12 DHCP Prever config       .82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       .82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       .83         5.12.3 Port bind       .86         5.12.4 Static client config       .86         5.12.5 Leases list       .87         6.1 Ja interface config       .87         6.1 Ja interface config       .89         6.1 L3 interface config       .99         6.2 Show route       .88         6.3 Static config       .90         6.4 RIP config       .90         6.4.1 RIP global config       .90         6.4.2 RIP config       .92         6.5 USPF global config                                                              | •                 |  |
| 5.8.2 QOS port config       78         5.9 LDP config       78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP       78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDLD config       81         5.10 UDLD config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12.2 DHCP Dool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       92         6.4 RIP config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       93         6.5.1 OSPF global config       93         6.6.2 VRRP track       96                                                                                    |                   |  |
| 5.9 LLDP config       78         5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP       78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.10 UDDL config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       81         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP Poly Paddress allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.4 Static client config       83         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 Ja interface config       88         6.3 Static config       90         6.4.1 RIP global config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       93         6.6.3 VRRP config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       93         6.6.3 VRRP na,       96         6.6.3 VRRP na,       99         6.7.1 Show ARP       99 </td <td></td> <td></td>                                               |                   |  |
| 5.9.1 Working Mode of LLDP.       78         5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDL Config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static Client config       86         5.12.4 Static Client config       87         6 Route manage       87         6.3 Static config       87         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       99         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa <td></td> <td></td>                                                                      |                   |  |
| 5.9.2 Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message       79         5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message.       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDLD config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       90         6.4.1 RIP global config       92         6.5.1 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nga       97         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP config       99         6.7.1 Show ARP                                                                                           |                   |  |
| 5.9.3 Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message.       79         5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDLD config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.4 Static client config       85         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4.1 RIP config       90         6.5.1 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.5.1 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       93         6.6.1 VRRP config       94         6.6.1 VRP config       95         6.6.2 VRAP track       96         99       6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.1 Show ARP                                                                                                         |                   |  |
| 5.9.4 LLDP global config       79         5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDD Lornfig       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.2 VRRP config       92         6.6.3 VRRP nga       96         6.6.4 VRRP config       92         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time <td< td=""><td></td><td></td></td<>                                                                 |                   |  |
| 5.9.5 Port config       80         5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDL config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12 DHCP Pool config       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.5.1 OSPF global config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       95         6.6.3 VRP nqa       97         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100 <td></td> <td></td>                                                                              |                   |  |
| 5.9.6 LLDP neighbors       81         5.10 UDL config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.1 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.5 OSPF config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 I OSPF global config       92         6.5 I OSPF config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       93         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network secur                                                                                                                         |                   |  |
| 5.10 UDLD config       81         5.11 Link-flap config       82         5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP                                                                                            |                   |  |
| 5.11 Link-flap config.       82         5.12 DHCP Server config.       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config.       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       90         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 CSPF config       92         6.6 VRRP config       94         6.6.1 VRRP config       94         6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 ND config       101                                                                                                                                                            |                   |  |
| 5.12 DHCP Server config       82         5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 SOPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                   |  |
| 5.12.1 DHCP IP address allocation       82         5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       93         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.1 ND list       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                           |                   |  |
| 5.12.2 DHCP pool config       83         5.12.3 Port bind.       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 I OSPF global config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.7 APC config       93         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                     |                   |  |
| 5.12.3 Port bind       85         5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.5.1 OSPF config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.2 VRRP config       94         6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.7 ARP config       93         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       100                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                   |  |
| 5.12.4 Static client config       86         5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 I OSPF global config       92         6.5 I OSPF global config       92         6.5 I OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       94         6.6.2 VRRP config       94         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       95         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                   |  |
| 5.12.5 Leases list       87         6 Route manage       87         6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       90         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5 I OSPF global config       92         6.5 I OSPF config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.6 I VRP config       92         6.6 I VRP config       92         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                   |  |
| 6 Route manage       87         6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4. RIP config       90         6.4. 2 RIP config       90         6.5 OSPF config       91         6.5 OSPF global config.       92         6.5 I OSPF global config.       92         6.6 VRP config       92         6.6 VRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRP config.       94         6.6.2 VRP track       96         6.6.3 VRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config.       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                       |                   |  |
| 6.1 L3 interface config       87         6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.3 Static config       89         6.4 RIP config       90         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.5 VRRP config       92         6.6 VRRP config       94         6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         99       6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                   |  |
| 6.2 Show route       88         6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       92         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | •                 |  |
| 6.3 Static config       88         6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.5 VRRP config       92         6.6 VRRP config       92         6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                   |  |
| 6.4 RIP config       89         6.4.1 RIP global config.       90         6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config.       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config.       92         6.6 VRRP config.       92         6.6.1 VRRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRRP config.       95         6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.9 NQA config.       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                   |  |
| 6.4.1 RIP global config.       90         6.4.2 RIP config.       91         6.5 OSPF config.       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config.       92         6.6 VRRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRRP config.       95         6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.3 VRRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                   |  |
| 6.4.2 RIP config       91         6.5 OSPF config       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config       92         6.6 VRRP config       94         6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                   |  |
| 6.5 OSPF config.       92         6.5.1 OSPF global config.       92         6.6 VRRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRRP config.       95         6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8 ND config.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                   |  |
| 6.5.1 OSPF global config.       92         6.6 VRRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRRP config.       95         6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config.       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |  |
| 6.6 VRRP config.       94         6.6.1 VRRP config.       95         6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP.       99         6.7.2 Static ARP.       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8 ND config.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.9 NQA config.       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                   |  |
| 6.6.1 VRRP config       95         6.6.2 VRRP track       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa       97         6.7 ARP config       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                   |  |
| 6.6.2 VRRP track.       96         6.6.3 VRRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP.       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8 ND config.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.9 NQA config.       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                   |  |
| 6.6.3 VRRP nqa.       97         6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8 ND config.       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config.       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | -                 |  |
| 6.7 ARP config.       98         6.7.1 Show ARP       99         6.7.2 Static ARP       99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                   |  |
| 6.7.1 Show ARP       .99         6.7.2 Static ARP       .99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       .100         6.8 ND config       .100         6.8.1 ND list       .100         6.8.2 Static ND       .101         6.9 NQA config       .101         7 Network security       .102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                   |  |
| 6.7.2 Static ARP       .99         6.7.3 ARP age-time       100         6.8 ND config       .100         6.8.1 ND list       .100         6.8.2 Static ND       .101         6.9 NQA config       .101         7 Network security       .102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | -                 |  |
| 6.7.3 ARP age-time.       100         6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list.       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                   |  |
| 6.8 ND config       100         6.8.1 ND list       100         6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |  |
| 6.8.1 ND list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | -                 |  |
| 6.8.2 Static ND       101         6.9 NQA config       101         7 Network security       102                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |  |
| 6.9 NQA config                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                   |  |
| 7 Network security                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | -                 |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



| 7.2 Attack protection config | 103 |
|------------------------------|-----|
| 7.3 ACL config               |     |
| 7.3.1 MAC ACL config         | 104 |
| 7.3.2 IP ACL config          | 105 |
| 7.3.3 ACL GROUP config       | 107 |
| 7.4 Traffic monitor          | 108 |
| 7.5 Alarm config             | 109 |
| 7.5.1 System alarm           | 109 |
| 7.5.2 Link alarm             | 110 |
| 7.6 802.1x config            | 110 |
| 7.6.1 Global config          | 115 |
| 7.6.2 Port config.           | 116 |
| 7.6.3 User config            | 117 |
| 8 Extend management          |     |
| 8.1 onvif-config             | 118 |
| 8.2 QINQ-config              | 118 |
| 8.3 TIME RANGE config        |     |
| 8.4 Devices config           | 120 |
| 8.5 VOIP-config.             | 120 |
| 9 system maintenance         |     |
| 9.1 Log config               | 121 |
| 9.2 Reboot                   |     |
| 9.3 NTP config               | 122 |
| 9.4 Online Upgrading         | 123 |
| 9.5 Diagnosis test           |     |
| 9.5.1 ping                   |     |
| 9.5.2 Traceroute             |     |
|                              |     |



## **1** Summary

The Instructions mainly describe the simple configuration for WEB page operation of the switch, and users can manage the switch through the WEB page of the switch. The main features of WEB access are:

- Easy to access: users can easily access the switch anywhere from the network.
- Users can access WEB pages of the switch with their familiar browsers such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, etc., and WEB pages are presented to users in graphical and tabular forms.
- The switch provides rich WEB pages through which users can configure and manage most of the switch's functions.
- The classification and integration of the WEB page functions is convenient for users to find the relevant pages for configuration and management.



1. Please use the Internet Explorer browser above version 8.0

2. When you log in the switch and set or change the Web page, you should pay attention to save and click the "save configuration" under the "system maintenance". Otherwise, your setup or change will not be saved after the switch is restarted.



# 2 Login the Web Page

## 2.1 Login the Web network management client

By opening the Web browser, users can enter the default address of the switch in the address bar: http://192.168.1.254, and press the Enter key, as shown in the following figure:

| <b>GO</b> + | m http://192.168.1.254/ | ~ |
|-------------|-------------------------|---|
| ~~          |                         |   |

The login window is popped at this time, as shown in the following figure. Enter the default management username: admin and password admin, click the <login> button, you will see the switch's system information.

| ivianageu | Industrial | Ethernet Swit | tch |
|-----------|------------|---------------|-----|
| User      |            |               |     |
| Passwd    |            |               |     |
|           |            |               |     |

Explanation

- 1. When you log in a switch, the IP segment of the PC should be consistent with the switch network segment.
- 2. When you log in a switch for the first time, set the IP address of PC to be 192.168.1.x (x represents 1~254, except 254), the subnet mask to be 255.255.255.0, but the IP of PC can't be the same as that of the switch, that is, it cannot be 192.168.1.254.
- 3. The WebServer of the switch provides 5 times to enter username and password. If you enter incorrectly for 5 times, the browser will display "Bad passwords ,too many failures ,wait ten minuts" error information. The user need to wait ten minutes , and enter the correct username and password; after logging in the WebServer, it is recommended to modify the username and password.

## 2.2 Client interface composition

The client of the Web network management system is as shown in the following figure, which contains the setting navigation and operation areas.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| o User Config     | Device infomation                                | C | Usage     | C                               |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------|---|-----------|---------------------------------|
| o Management File | Device model Switch                              |   |           |                                 |
| o Access Config   | SN 20210610                                      |   |           |                                 |
| o SNMP Config     | Device name switch                               |   | 8%        | 76%                             |
|                   | Software version 5.0.0 build 845                 |   | CPU usage | Memory usage                    |
|                   | CPU MAC 90:7e:ba:10:22:18                        |   |           |                                 |
|                   | Running time ODay, 0 Hours, 3 Minutes, 3 Seconds |   |           | (free:27628 KB, total:116328 KB |
|                   | Time Zone UTC+8                                  |   |           |                                 |
|                   | Device Time 2020-1-1 8:03:10                     |   |           |                                 |
|                   |                                                  |   |           |                                 |
|                   | Setting navigation Operation                     |   |           |                                 |

| Area               | Explanation                                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Port pannel        | Port status                                                    |
| Setting navigation | The corresponding navigation can be selected for all operating |
|                    | functions                                                      |
| Exit operation     | Click the icon to return to the login interface                |
| Operation area     | Specific settings and operations for all functional modules    |

## 2.3 Web interface navigation tree

The menu of Web network management mainly provides 6 menu items such as system manage, interface manage, business manage, route manage, network security, and system maintenance. There are submenus under each menu option, as shown in the following table.

| Menu item | Submenus          | Explanation                                               |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| System    | System            | Display product information & running information         |  |  |  |  |  |
| manage    | information       |                                                           |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | Management        | Save configuration, restore factory Settings and download |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | file              | and upload configuration files                            |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | User config       | Config user name, password, limitation                    |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | Access config     | Enable/disable TELNET service, configuration of           |  |  |  |  |  |
|           |                   | HTTP/HTTPS service                                        |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | SNMP config       | Provide configuration for SNMP                            |  |  |  |  |  |
| Interface | Port              | Configuration for port rate, flow control                 |  |  |  |  |  |
| manage    | management        |                                                           |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | Storm contorl     | Support the storm control of the broadcast, unknown       |  |  |  |  |  |
|           |                   | multicast and unknown single broadcast, prevent the       |  |  |  |  |  |
|           |                   | broadcast storm of these three types of messages          |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | Port-rate limit   | Provide configuration for port rate                       |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | Mirror            | Provide configuration for port mirror                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | LACP              | Provide configuration for LACP                            |  |  |  |  |  |
|           | Isolate-port conf | Fig Provide configuration for layer 2 port isolation      |  |  |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



|                                                                                             | Port statistics      | Provide query port profiles and detailed statistics        |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Business                                                                                    | VLAN                 | Provide the functions of configuring and querying          |  |  |  |
| manage                                                                                      | configuration        | VLAN, interface information                                |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | MAC configuration    | Provide the functions of configuring and querying the      |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      | MAC address table information, MAC aging time,             |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      | MAC learning and static MAC                                |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Spanning-tree        | Provide the functions of configuring and querying the      |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | configuration        | device STP global configuration, instance configuration    |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      | instance configuration management and configuration        |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      | management.                                                |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | ERPS-Ring Config     | ERPS Ring Config                                           |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | RING Config          | ring config                                                |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | IGMP-snooping        | Provide the functions of configuring and querying the      |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | config               | IGMP Snooping configuration and static multicast           |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | MLD-snooping         | IPv6 multicast address listening is provided               |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Config               |                                                            |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | QOS config           | Provide the functions of configuring and querying QOS      |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      | global configuration and configuration management          |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | LLDP config          | Provide the functions of configuring and querying QOS      |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Č                    | global configuration, configuration management and         |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      | LLDP neighbors                                             |  |  |  |
| P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P<br>P | UDLD Config          | Single pass link detection function                        |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Link-flap-config     | Link oscillation detection function                        |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | DHCP Server          | Provides configuration for DHCP Server, address pool,      |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | config               | client list, static client configuration, and port binding |  |  |  |
| Route manage                                                                                | L3 interface         | L3 interface configuration                                 |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Check route          | Check all the route information                            |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Static configuration | Provide the functions of static route configuration        |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | RIP configuration    | Provide the functions of RIP route configuration           |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | OSPF                 | Provide the functions of OSPF route configuration          |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | configuration        |                                                            |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | VRRP                 | Provide the functions of VRRP route configuration          |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | configuration        |                                                            |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | ARP configuration    | Provide the functions of ARP route configuration           |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | ND-config            |                                                            |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | NQA-config           |                                                            |  |  |  |
| Network                                                                                     | Access config        | Provide filter rules and device access rules               |  |  |  |
| security                                                                                    |                      | configuration                                              |  |  |  |
| -                                                                                           | Attack protection    | Provide attack protection configuration function           |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | ACL config           | Provide ACL config function                                |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Traffic monitor      | Monitor data of each interface entry                       |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             | Alarm config         | Configation for power, port alarm                          |  |  |  |
|                                                                                             |                      |                                                            |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



|             |                   | 802.1x authentication configuration and Radius server configuration |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | onvif-config      | Onvif device information display                                    |
|             | QINQ-config       | QINQ function setting                                               |
|             | Time Range Config | Time period setting                                                 |
|             | Devices-config    | Connected device information display                                |
|             | VOIP-config       | Voip Connected device information display                           |
| System      | NTP config        | Provide configuration & NTP server checking function                |
| maintenance | Log config        | Display the log of the device                                       |
|             | diagnostic        | Porvide Ping, Traceroute, port circuit function                     |
|             | Reboot device     | Reboot the switch                                                   |
|             | Online upgrading  | Upgrade the software version of the switch                          |



## **3** System manage

# **3.1** System information 3.1.1Interface description

The panel display area of Web network management can display the product information of the switch very intuitively, according to the switch connected to it. Its display contents include ports quantity, ports condition, system information, version information and running status. The interface is shown as the following figure:

| System Manage     | ~    | -                | m Manage / System Information       |   |   |                 | 🖺 Save                           |
|-------------------|------|------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|-----------------|----------------------------------|
|                   |      |                  |                                     |   |   |                 |                                  |
| o User Config     |      | Device informat  | ion                                 | C | ß | Usage           | C                                |
| O Management File |      | Device model     | Switch                              |   |   |                 |                                  |
| o Access Config   |      | SN               | 20210610                            |   |   |                 |                                  |
| o SNMP Config     |      | Devide name      | switch                              |   |   | 8%<br>CPU usage | 76%<br>Memory usage              |
|                   |      | Software version | 5.0.0 build 845                     |   |   |                 |                                  |
|                   |      | CPU MAC          | 90:7e:ba:10:22:18                   |   |   |                 |                                  |
|                   |      | Running time     | 0Day, 0 Hours, 3 Minutes, 3 Seconds |   |   |                 | (free:27628 KB, total:116328 KB) |
|                   |      | Time Zone        | UTC+8                               |   |   |                 |                                  |
|                   |      | Device Time      | 2020-1-1 8:03:10                    |   |   |                 |                                  |
|                   |      |                  |                                     |   |   |                 |                                  |
|                   |      |                  |                                     |   |   |                 |                                  |
|                   |      |                  |                                     |   |   |                 |                                  |
| -1                |      |                  |                                     |   |   |                 |                                  |
| Expl              | anat | tion             |                                     |   |   |                 |                                  |

Click one of the ports, it shows the port number, type, transmission rate and status. You can modify "Device name", "Device time", and click "Submit" to complete the configuration

## 3.1.2Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                                                             |  |  |  |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Device model       | Model number                                                                                                        |  |  |  |
| Device name        | Network identification used by devices to facilitate the judgment by integrated management tools                    |  |  |  |
| Hardware version   | Display the hardware vesrsion of the device, pls pay attention on the hardware limitation from the software version |  |  |  |
| Software version   | Display the version and release time of the current software                                                        |  |  |  |
| Running time       | Current device running time                                                                                         |  |  |  |
| CPU usage          | CPU running information                                                                                             |  |  |  |
| Memory usage       | Memory running information                                                                                          |  |  |  |
| CPU MAC            | MAC address of the device                                                                                           |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



## 3.1.3Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "System configuration" menu in the navigation bar to enter the "System  |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | configuration" interface. Click "System information".                             |
| Step 2 | You can carry out Device name, time related modification settings. Click "Submit" |
|        | to complete settings after modification.                                          |
| Step 3 | If you need to make it as a startup configuration, you need to enter "System      |
|        | maintenance" and save it under "Save settings".                                   |

# **3.2** User management 3.2.1Interface description

The user can view the current username and permissions of the switch, and modify the username, password and permissions. The interface is shown as the following figure



### 3.2.2Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| User name          | Display the username of the access system. The username can't be empty or contain characters. |
| Password           | The password to manage the user. The password can't be empty or contain characters.           |
| Permission         | It divided into the administrator permission – Administrator, and the                         |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



ordinary user permission - Viewer.

### 3.2.3Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "System configuration" menu in the navigation bar to enter the "System                              |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | configuration" interface. Click the "User management" tab, and you can see the                                |
|        | default username: admin, password: admin                                                                      |
| Step 2 | If a user needs to submit a new user, click "Add user". If a user needs to delete a username, click "Delete". |
| Step 3 | If you need to make it as a startup configuration, you need to enter "System                                  |
|        | maintenance" and save it under "Save settings".                                                               |

# **3.3** Configuration Management**3.3.1** Management file

The user can view the current running configuration. Click the "System manage" menu in the navigation bar to enter the "System manage" interface. The interface is shown as the following figure

| o System Information | UN      | Carlos and and |                          | -               |  |  |
|----------------------|---------|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| o User Config        |         | Running-config | Start-config             | Management File |  |  |
|                      | е       | version 5.0.0  |                          |                 |  |  |
| o Access Config      |         | ip http-serve  | er all<br>er language en |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | ip telnet-ser  |                          |                 |  |  |
| o SNMP Config        |         | 1              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      | _       | username admi  | in password LUE          | zCOSQ9GmP6      |  |  |
|                      | ~       | 1              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | interface tru  | unk2                     |                 |  |  |
|                      | ~       | !              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | interface gel  | 1/1                      |                 |  |  |
|                      | ~       | trunk 2        |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | !              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      | <i></i> | interface gel  | 1/2                      |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | trunk 2        |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      | - U     | 1              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      | ×       | interface gel  | 1/3                      |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | 1              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      | × .     | interface get  | 1/4                      |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | 1              |                          |                 |  |  |
|                      |         | interface ge   | 1 /5                     |                 |  |  |

If you need to make it as a startup configuration, you need to save it under "Save settings"

## 3.3.2 The start config

If you need to make it as a startup configuration, click the "System manage" menu in the navigation bar to enter the "System manage" interface, and save it under "Save settings". The interface is shown as the following figure



| ment Position : Sys | tem Manage / Mar | nagement File   |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| Running-config      | Start-config     | Management File |
|                     |                  |                 |
| version 5.0.0       | ) build 845      |                 |
| ip http-serve       |                  |                 |
|                     | er language en   |                 |
| ip telnet-ser       | ver              |                 |
| 1                   |                  |                 |
| username admi       | n password LUB   | zCOSQ9GmP6      |
| 1                   |                  |                 |
| interface gel       | ./1              |                 |
| 1                   |                  |                 |
| interface gel       | ./2              |                 |
|                     | 10               |                 |
| interface gel       | ./3              |                 |
| interface gel       | 14               |                 |
| Interface ger       | ./ 4             |                 |
| interface gel       | /5               |                 |
| 1                   | ., 0             |                 |
| interface gel       | /6               |                 |
| !                   |                  |                 |
| interface gel       | /7               |                 |

If you need to make the factory default as a startup configuration, you need to click restore, and then reboot the device. User also can download the startup configuration file by click "download" to get the ".con" file.

## 3.3.3 Management file

The user can view the current running configuration. Click the "Management file" menu in the navigation bar to enter the interface. The interface is shown as the following figure

| reni Pusition : oysi | en waraye / war | generit File                     |  |  |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|--|--|
| Running-config       | Start-config    | Management File                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
| File path            | choose file     | No files were choosed            |  |  |
|                      | Upload          | System will retart automatically |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |
|                      |                 |                                  |  |  |

If you need to make it as a startup configuration, you need to click "choose file" and upload it.

# **3.4** Access config **3.4.1** Telnet config

#### 1. Interface description

After enable TELNET service, TELNET terminal can connect with the switch by TELNET via PC, the interface is shown as the following figure:



| O System Information   | Current Position : System Man | ego / Access Config                                                            | ^ |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| o User Config          | C Apply                       |                                                                                |   |
| o Management File      | HTTP-config                   |                                                                                |   |
| o Access Config        | HTTP Service                  | C Enable                                                                       |   |
| o SNMP Config          | HTTPS Service                 | C Enable                                                                       |   |
| Interface Manage 🛛 🗸   | Port                          | 80 Default is 80, Modify default port, need specify port number at web browers |   |
| Business Manage 🔍 🗸    | Telnet-config                 |                                                                                |   |
| Route Manage 🗸 🗸 🗸     | Telnet Service                |                                                                                |   |
| Network security 🗸 🗸   | Port                          | 23                                                                             |   |
| Extend Management 🗸 🗸  |                               |                                                                                |   |
| System maintenance 🗸 🗸 | SSH-config                    |                                                                                |   |
|                        | SSHService                    |                                                                                |   |
| admin Logout           |                               |                                                                                |   |

#### **2.** Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "System manage >Access configuration" menu in the navigation tree to         |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | enter the interface, tick the telnet service, set the port number, default port number |
|        | is "23", click "apply".                                                                |
| Step 2 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running           |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                                |



### Explanation

The terminal use TELNET to connect with the switch via PC should contain below condition:

1. Enable the TELNET service of the switch

2. Should to know the IP address of the switch, and can be obtained by modifying(can use IP command )

3. If the port of the terminal PC which connects with the switch is under the same LAN, THE IP address should be set in the same network segment.

Once fulfill above condition, it can use TELNET to log in this switch, then config the switch.

#### 3. E.G.

# Before log in the switch via TELNET, you have to input "TELNET+SPACE KEY+IP", input "enter" in PC:



| process(1)                        |
|-----------------------------------|
|                                   |
|                                   |
|                                   |
|                                   |
|                                   |
|                                   |
|                                   |
| P See more results                |
| teinet 192.168.5.33 × power off • |

## 3.4.2 HTTPS config

#### 1. Interface description

HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer) is a HTTP channel that based on safety, it is the safety version of HTTP. HTTPS provides data encryption service. It prevents the transmitted message between web browser and website server from attacker's catch, so as to get any of important message, such as credit card number, password. User can modify the port number, and user also can close HTTP and HTTPS service.

| HTTP_config   |         |                                                                             |
|---------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| HTTP Service  | 🗹 Enabl | le                                                                          |
| HTTPS Service | 🗹 Enabl | le                                                                          |
| Port          | 80      | Default is 60, Modify default port, need specify port number at web browers |

#### **2.** Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                 |  |  |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| HTTP               | Visiting format: e.g. HTTP://192.168.1.254: port number |  |  |
| HTTPS              | Visiting format: e.g. HTTPS://192.168.1.254°            |  |  |
| Port number        | Default is 80                                           |  |  |

#### **3.** Operation steps

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Step 1 | Click the "System manage >HTTP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | interface, user can check the system default config.                            |
| Step 2 | User can modify the default port number                                         |
| Step 3 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running    |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                         |

#### 4. E.G.

#Visit the IP address 192.168.1.70 from port number 8000, the IP setting in browser is as below:



Explanations

When modify the port as 8000, if need to log in again, please add port number while input the IP address. E.g.: http://192.168.1.254:8000

## 3.5 SNMP config

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a network management standard protocol used for the TCP/IP network. It provides SNMP a method to manage the equipment through operating the central computer (i.e. network management workstation) of the network management software.

SNMP features :

- Simple: SNMP adopts polling-driven, it provides the basic functions, which is suitable for small, fast and low price environment. And SNMP adopts UDP message, this is supported by most of the devices.
- Strong: The target of SNMP is to make sure the managed information to be transmitted at any two different nodes, this is convenient for the administrator to check the information at any nodes of the network, so as to modify it or check the problems. There are 3 versions are widely used: SNMPv1, SNMPv2c and SNMPv3<sub>o</sub> SNMP system includes

NMS ( Network Management System ) , Agent, Management object & MIB (Management Information Base) .

As the core of the network management, NMS manage the devices. Each managed devices include Agent, MIB & Management objects. NMS communicates with the running managed device Agent, and then Agent opertate it via MIB of the device, so as to NMS demand.

SNMP management mode

AVCOMM technologies Inc.





#### NMS

NMS acts as administrator in the network, which is a system managing/ monitoring the network equipment using SNMP and works on the NMS server. It can send a request to Agent on the equipment and inquire or modify one or more specific parameter value(s). It can receive the Trap information proactively sent by Agent on the equipment to know the current state of the managed equipment.

#### Agent

• Agent is an agent in the managed equipment, which is used for maintaining the information data of the managed equipment, responding to the request of NMS and reporting the management data to NMS. After receiving the request information from NMS and completing the corresponding command through MIB, Agent responds to the operation result to NMS. When the equipment has a fault or other events, it will proactively send the information to NMS through Agent to report the change in its current state.

#### Management object

• Each set of equipment may contain several management objects. The management object may be a set of hardware (e.g. an interface board) in the equipment, or a set of hardware, software (e.g. routing protocol) and other configuration parameters.

#### MIB

• As a database, MIB defines the variable (i.e. information which can be inquired and set by Agent) maintained by the managed equipment. MIB defines a series of attributes of the managed equipment in the database, including object name, object state, object access permission and object data type. With MIB, the following functions can be served: By inquiring MIB, Agent can get the current state information of the equipment. By modifying MIB, it can set the equipment state parameter.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



#### Operation steps

1. Click the "Advanced config> SNMP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "SNMP configuration" interface.

| <ul> <li>System Infomati</li> </ul> |          | Global Config | Trap -config | View-config | Community-config | V3 User-config |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|----------------|
| o User Config                       |          |               | _            |             | , , , , ,        |                |
| o Management Fil                    | 8        | C Apply       |              |             |                  |                |
| o Access Config                     |          | SNMP          | O Enable 🧿   | Disable     |                  |                |
|                                     |          | Version       | v1,v2c,v3    |             |                  |                |
|                                     |          | Device name   | switch       |             |                  |                |
|                                     | ~        | Description   | cns-5.0.0    |             | (1-12)           | Chars)         |
|                                     | ~        | Location      | Unknown      |             | (1-12            | Chars)         |
|                                     | ~        | Contact       | x@x          |             | (1-12            | Chers)         |
|                                     | ~        | Engine no.    |              |             | (10-6-           | Hex Chars)     |
|                                     | ~        |               |              |             |                  |                |
|                                     | <u> </u> |               |              |             |                  |                |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Sub item           | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SNMP config        | Mode               | Enable or disable                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                    | Version            | Supports SNMPv1、SNMPv2c 和 SNMPv3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                    | Read/write<br>area | No optional , the default is supported. It is used for<br>authentification between Agent & NMS, character<br>string, user can define it. The group name includes<br>"readable" &"writeable". When running GetRequest ,<br>GetNextRequest , it adopts "public", when running<br>"set", it adopts "private".<br>If NMS needs to get the sysContact value of MIB node<br>from the device be managed, it use readable group<br>name "public".<br>If NMS needs to get the sysContact value of next MIB<br>node from the device be managed, it use readable<br>group name "public".<br>If NMS needs to set the sysName value of MIB node<br>from the device be managed, it use readable<br>group name "public". |
|                    |                    | readable group name "Private".                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Trap config        | Mode               | Optional, enable or disable. Trap is the managed device<br>send message to NMS actively without request. It is<br>used for reporting emergent event. Please note that you<br>should config SNMP basic function before Trapconfig.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                    | Trapv1<br>received | Necessary fill, set the address of Trap dest host                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                    | Trapv2<br>received | Necessary fill, set the address of Trap dest host                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| User config | Read user  | Set read user, the security level is authentication and<br>encryption, the specified authentication protocol is<br>MD5 & SHA, the specified encryption protocol is AES<br>& DES  |
|-------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | Write user | Set write user, the security level is authentication and<br>encryption, the specified authentication protocol is<br>MD5 & SHA, the specified encryption protocol is AES<br>& DES |

2. Fill in the corresponding configuration item and click "Submit"

## **4** Interface manage

## **4.1** Port management

#### 1. Interface description

Port management page includes Medium(coper or fiber) information, applyrate, flow control function. It works only the port enables these functions. It supports auto negotiation. The interface is shown as the following figure:

| o Port Management     | САр      | ply    |        |                     |           |             |              |           |        |
|-----------------------|----------|--------|--------|---------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------|
| O Storm control       | PortName | Status | Medium | Auto<br>negotiation | ApplyRate | Rate        | Flow control | Max-Frame | Enable |
| O Port rate-Limit     | *        |        |        | •                   | · •       |             | • •          | *         |        |
| o Mirror              | ge1/1    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🗢      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | 3         |        |
| o Port channel Config | ge1/2    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🗢      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | 3         |        |
| o Isolate-port Config | ge1/3    | Up     | Copper |                     | 1G 🗢      | 100M (Half) | ٠            | 3         |        |
| O Port statistics     | ge1/4    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🗢      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | 3         |        |
|                       | ge1/5    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🗢      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | 3         |        |
| usiness Manage 🛛 🗸    | ge1/6    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🖨      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | 3         |        |
| oute Manage 🛛 🛩       | ge1/7    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🖨      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗘    | 3         |        |
| etwork security 🗸 🗸   | ge1/8    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🖨      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | 3         |        |
|                       | ge1/9    | Down   | Copper |                     | 1G 🗢      | 100M (Half) | disable 🗢    | з         |        |

#### 2.Explanations

| Configuration item  | Meaning                                                                                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Port name           | Relative port names, it is matched with the number on the switch panel.                      |
| Status              | The port is connecting or not                                                                |
| Medium              | Copper port or fiber port. 1000BaseSFP fiber port adopts Gigabit mini-GBIC for transmission. |
| Auto<br>negotiation | Auto gegotiation, supports 0Mbits/s、100Mbits/s、1000Mbit/s                                    |
| Apply rate          | Port transmission rate                                                                       |



| Flow control | <ul> <li>When this terminal and the opposite terminal device enable the flow control, if there is block in this terminal device, it will send message to the opposite terminal device, inform the opposite terminal device stops to send message to it; The opposite device will stop to send message to this terminal device once receive the message. This prevents from message loss.</li> <li>Disable : Disable PAUSE frame receive &amp; transmit rx (Rx PAUSE) : Enable PAUSE frame receive both (Rx/Tx PAUSE) : Enable PAUSE frame receive &amp; transmit</li> </ul> |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              | tx (Tx PAUSE) : Enable PAUSE frame transmit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Max. frame   | Display the max. frame of port transmission. Scope: $64-16356_{\circ}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Enable       | Display the port-forwarding data status, if the port is close, it means it can't forward.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

#### 3. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Interface manage >port management" menu in the navigation tree to |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:         |
| Step 2 | Configured the ports                                                         |
| Step 3 | Save the setting                                                             |
| Step 4 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                      |

### 4.2 Storm control

#### 1. Interface description

Storm control adopts below way to prevent broadcast, unknown multicast & unknown unicast from broadcast storm. The device supports port storm control under these 3 types by packet rate. During a detect time interval, compare the averate rate between these 3 type message and the max value, when the message rate over the max value, the device will start the storm control to the port.

When the layer 2 Ethernet port of the device receives broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast message, if the dest MAC address device can't understand the message ports according to this message, the device will forward this message to other layer 2 Ethernet ports which in the sam VLAN. This may cause broadcast storm, lower the forwarding performance of the device. AAdopts storm control function, these 3 types message flow can be controlled. The inferface is shown as below figure:

| o Port Management                       | C Apply  |           |   |               |      |          |   |  |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|-----------|---|---------------|------|----------|---|--|
| O Storm control                         | PortName | Broadcast |   | Unkown-Multic | cast | DLF      |   |  |
| O Port rate-Limit                       | *        | *         | ÷ | *             | +    | *        | ÷ |  |
|                                         | ge1/1    | disabled  | ٠ | disabled      | •    | disabled | • |  |
| O Mirror                                | ge1/2    | disabled  | ٠ | disabled      | •    | disabled | ٠ |  |
| <ul> <li>Port channel Config</li> </ul> | ge1/3    | disabled  | ÷ | disabled      | ÷    | disabled | ÷ |  |
| o Isolate-port Config                   | ge1/4    | disabled  | • | disabled      | •    | disabled | • |  |
| o Port statistics                       | ge1/5    | disabled  | • | disabled      | •    | disabled | + |  |
| usiness Manage 🗸 🗸 🗸                    | ge1/6    | disabled  | ÷ | disabled      | •    | disabled | • |  |
| oute Manage 🛛 🗸                         | ge1/7    | disabled  | ÷ | disabled      | +    | disabled | • |  |
| etwork security 🗸 🗸                     | ge1/8    | disabled  | ٠ | disabled      | •    | disabled | • |  |
| etwork secondy                          | ge1/9    | disabled  | • | disabled      | •    | disabled | • |  |



#### **2.** Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Broadcast          | Frame of FF-FF-FF-FF-FF                                                  |
| Unknown-mult       | Frame of XX-XX-XX-XX-XX, THE 2 <sup>ND</sup> X is odd number             |
| icast              |                                                                          |
| DLF                | The MAC address of this frame is not in the device internal index table. |

#### **3.** Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Interface manage >storm control" menu in the navigation tree to enter   |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | the interface.                                                                     |
| Step 2 | Choose the port to be configured, set the value of broadcast, unknown-multicast, & |
|        | DLF.                                                                               |
| Step 3 | Click "apply".                                                                     |
| Step 4 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running       |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                            |

## 4.3 Port rate-limit

#### 1. Interface description

Port rate-Limit is to limit the rate of port data receiving. User can control the communication flow of each port, and fix the rate under certain value. The range is 0kbps~ 1000Mbps, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port Management     | C Apply  |           |   |            |    |            |    |            |     |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|---|------------|----|------------|----|------------|-----|
| Storm control       | PortName | InputRate |   | InputBurst |    | OutputRate |    | OutputBurs | t . |
| Port rate-Limit     | *        | *         | + | *          | +  | *          | ÷  | *          | ÷   |
|                     | ge1/1    | disabled  | ٠ | disabled   | •  | disabled   | ٠  | disabled   | \$  |
| Mirror              | ge1/2    | disabled  | • | disabled   | ٠  | disabled   | ٠  | disabled   | ٠   |
| Port channel Config | ge1/3    | disabled  | • | disabled   | \$ | disabled   | •  | disabled   | •   |
| Isolate-port Config | ge1/4    | disabled  | ÷ | disabled   | ÷  | disabled   | ÷  | disabled   | ÷   |
| Port statistics     | ge1/5    | disabled  | ٠ | disabled   | •  | disabled   | ٠  | disabled   | \$  |
| ness Manage 🛛 🗸     | ge1/6    | disabled  | • | disabled   | •  | disabled   | ٠  | disabled   | ٠   |
| e Manage 🗸 🗸        | ge1/7    | disabled  | ٠ | disabled   | •  | disabled   | \$ | disabled   | ÷   |
| vork security 🗸     | ge1/8    | disabled  | • | disabled   | ٠  | disabled   | ÷  | disabled   | ÷   |
| voik according -    | ge1/9    | disabled  | + | disabled   | •  | disabled   | +  | disabled   | •   |



- 1. Set the output rate before the flow sending from the port
- 2. Set the input rate before the flow receiving from the port.

#### **2.** Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning |
|--------------------|---------|
|                    |         |
|                    |         |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



| Input  | Inputrate  | Inputrate range 0-1000000°         |
|--------|------------|------------------------------------|
|        | Burst      | Burst range 0-1000000 <sub>o</sub> |
| Output | Outputrate | Outputrate range 0-1000000°        |
|        | Burst      | Burst range 0-1000000 <sub>o</sub> |

#### 3. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Interface manage >Port rate -limit" menu in the navigation tree to enter |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | the interface.                                                                      |
| Step 2 | Choose the port to be configured, set the value of the rate.                        |
| Step 3 | Click "Apply".                                                                      |
| Step 4 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running        |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                             |



Burst need to be set too, if the inputrate or ouputrate is set. The burst value should be less than the inputrate & outputrate

## 4.4 Mirror

#### 1. Interface description

Port mirroring is to copy the message of the specified port of the switch to the destination port, where the copied port is called the source port, and the copying port is called the destination port. The destination port will be connected to the data detection device, and the user uses these devices to analyze the message received by the destination port to monitor and troubleshoot the network, as shown in the following figure:





The device interface is shown as follows:

#### **2.** Explanations

| ○ Port Management       C Mata         ○ Storm control       SourcePort       Destination port       Direction       nendle         ○ Port AtareaeLinit       Nerror       V       V       V       V         ○ Port Atareael Config       © Exitatesizes       V       V       V         Reaction Manage        V       V       V         Addmirror       X       X       X         SessionD       1 •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Storm Control     Port rate-Linkt     Mirror     Port rate-Linkt     Mirror     Port statestcos     Eusiness Manage     ✓     Rode Manage     ✓           |
| Nitror   Port sharnel Config   Isolate-port Config   Port statistics   Business Manage   Route Manage   Network sacurity     Addmirror     SessionD   1   gel/1   gel/2   gel/2   gel/26   gel/12   gel/1   gel/1   gel/1   gel/1   gel/1   gel/1   gel/1   gel/1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Port channel Config Esclases_port Config Port statistics Esclases_Manage Route Manage Addmirror X Addmirror X  SessionID 1  SessionID 1  Gge1/1  Gge1/2  Gge1 |
| • Isolate-port Config         • Port statistics         Business Manage         • Route Manage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| • Port statistics   Business Manage   • Route Manage   •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Bustness Manage   Route Manage   Network security     Addmirror     SessionID     1     SessionID     1     ge1/1   ge1/2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Network security         ×           Addmirror         ×           SessionID         1 •           ge1/1         ge1/2         ge1/3         ge1/4         ge1/5         ge1/7         ge1/8           SourcePort         ge1/9         ge1/10         ge1/12         ge1/13         ge1/14         ge1/15         ge1/16           ge1/25         ge1/26         ge1/27         ge1/28         Select All         ge1/1 •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Addmirror       X         SessionID       1 +         SessionID       1 +         SourcePort       ge1/1       ge1/2       ge1/3       ge1/4       ge1/5       ge1/6       ge1/7       ge1/8         SourcePort       ge1/9       ge1/10       ge1/11       ge1/12       ge1/13       ge1/14       ge1/15       ge1/16         ge1/25       ge1/26       ge1/27       ge1/28       Select All       ge1/1 +                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| SessionID       1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| □ge1/1       □ge1/2       □ge1/3       □ge1/4       □ge1/5       □ge1/7       □ge1/8         SourcePort       □ge1/9       □ge1/10       □ge1/11       □ge1/12       □ge1/13       □ge1/14       □ge1/15       □ge1/16         □ge1/25       □ge1/26       □ge1/27       □ge1/28       Select All         Destination port       ge1/1       \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| □ge1/1       □ge1/2       □ge1/3       □ge1/4       □ge1/5       □ge1/7       □ge1/8         SourcePort       □ge1/9       □ge1/10       □ge1/11       □ge1/12       □ge1/13       □ge1/14       □ge1/15       □ge1/16         □ge1/25       □ge1/26       □ge1/27       □ge1/28       Select All         Destination port       ge1/1       \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| SourcePort         ge1/9         ge1/10         ge1/11         ge1/12         ge1/13         ge1/14         ge1/15         ge1/16           ge1/25         ge1/26         ge1/27         ge1/28         Select All           Destination port         ge1/1         \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Destination port ge1/1 🗢                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Direction both +                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Add                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Configuration Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| This group defines the monitor ports. The device will collect data from this                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Source port port. Mirror port can be 1 or more.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| This group defines a port for monitoring. The device will output the data                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Destination port                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| with specified direction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| User can choose "ingress", "egress", "both" direction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| ingress: import data, the received message of the port will be mirrored t                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| the destination port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Direction                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| egress: Export data, the sent message of the port will be mirrored to the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| destination port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| both: Both data. Sent & received message will be mirrored                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

### **3.** Operation steps

\_

| Step 1 | Click the "Interface manage > mirror" menu in the navigation bar to enter the |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | "mirror" interface, and select the corresponding ID.                          |
| Step 2 | Check the source port and destination port and direction, click "Add"         |
| Step 3 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running  |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                       |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



#### 4. E.G.

# Configuration requirements: the user wants to monitor the message sent by PC2 with the monitoring device PC1.

# The configuration diagram is as follows: PC1 accesses to SwitchA through the interface ge1/1. PC2 is directly connected to the ge1/2 interface of SwitchA.



# Settings: enable the mirroring function on the webpage, and check the source port ge1/2, choose the destination port ge1/1, choose the exit and entrance directions, click Submit. The page is shown as follows:

| SessionID | SourcePort | Destination port | Direction | handle |
|-----------|------------|------------------|-----------|--------|
|           | ge1/1      | ge1/2            | both      | minute |

# **4.5** Link Aggregation**4.5.1** Introduction

#### 1. Interface description

Link Aggregation is a way to bind a group of physical interfaces together as a logical interface to increase bandwidth and reliability.

- LAG (Link Aggregation Group) refers to a logical link that is formed by bindling a number of Ethernet links together, abbreviated as Eth-Trunk.
- With the continuous expansion of the network scale, the user demands more and more bandwidth and reliability of the link. In traditional technology, the way of replacing for high-speed interface boards or devices that support high-speed interface boards is commonly used to increase bandwidth, but this scheme needs to pay a high price and is not flexible enough.
- Link aggregation technology can be used to increase link bandwidth by binding multiple physical interfaces into a logical interface without upgrading hardware. The backup mechanism of link aggregation can effectively improve the reliability. At the same time, the load sharing of traffic on different physical links can be realized.

As shown below, between SwitchA and SwitchB is connected by three Ethernet physical links, and binding the three links together will make an Eth-Trunk logical link, which bandwidth equals to the sum of the bandwidth of original three Ethernet physical links, so as to increase the link bandwidth; at the same time, the three Ethernet physical links back up each other, which effectively improves the reliability of the link.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.





Link aggregation schematic diagram

The following requirements can be realized by configuring link aggregation:

- When two switches are connected by one link, the bandwidth is not enough.
- When two switches are connected by one link, the reliability does not meet requirements.

Link aggregation is divided into manual load sharing mode and LACP mode based on whether link aggregation control protocol LACP is enabled.

Under the manual load sharing mode, the establishment of Eth-Trunk and the joining of member interface are manually configured without the participation of the link aggregation control protocol. Under this mode, all active links participate in the forwarding of data and the average sharing of traffic, so it is called the load sharing mode. If an active link fails, the link aggregation group will automatically share the traffic among the remaining active links. Manual load sharing mode can be used when a large link bandwidth is required between two direct connected devices while the device does not support the LACP protocol.

### 4.5.2 Static link-aggr

#### 1. Interface descriptoin

Static link aggregation is manually configured by user. It is not allowed system automatically add or delete the ports in link aggregation group. It should be contain at least one port in the group. When there is only one port in the group, you only can delete the port by the way of deleting the group. The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port Management Static link-aggr                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Port Config LACP | LACPStatus LACPstatistics     |       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-------|
| Storm control                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                  |                               |       |
| Port rate-Limit Group ID                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Type Status      | Load balance mode Port member | handl |
| Mirror                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                  |                               |       |
| Port channel Config                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                  |                               |       |
| a distribution of the second |                  |                               |       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                  |                               |       |
| Isolate-port Config                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                  |                               |       |
| Isolate-port Config<br>Port statistics                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                  |                               |       |
| Isolate-port Config<br>Port statistics                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                  |                               |       |

**2.** Explanations



| Configurat ion item | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Group ID            | Link-aggr ID, 1 ~ 16, total is 16                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Src Mac             | Load balance according to the source MAC address of the message. When the source MAC address is the same, the message go through the same port, otherwise, the message will go through the different ports.                                   |
| Dst Mac             | Load balance according to the destination MAC address of the message. When<br>the destination MAC address is the same, the message go through the same port,<br>otherwise, the message will go through the different ports.                   |
| Src&Dst<br>Mac      | Load balance according to the source & destination MAC address of the message.<br>When the source & destination MAC address is the same, the message go<br>through the same port, otherwise, the message will go through the different ports. |

#### 3. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Interface manage >Port channel config> Static link-aggr" menu in the                       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | navigation tree to enter the interface                                                                |
| Step 2 | Choose group ID(1-16), load balance mode: Src Mac,Dst Mac, Src& Dst Mac, choose the port, click "add" |
| Step 3 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running                          |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                                               |

#### 4. E.G.

- # Requirement 1: The SwithcA & SwitchB connect with VLAN10 & VLAN20, and there are big data flow between SwitchA & SwitchB
- #Requirement 2: User want it can be provided with big link bandwidth between SwitchA & SwitchB, so as to make the same VLAN to communicate each other. At the same time, user wants crtain redundancy to be provided with, so as to make sure the reliability of the data transmission.

#the interface is shown as the following figure:





**#Operation steps** 

1) Create Eth-Trunk port of the switch, add in the port list(SwitchB is the same as SwitchA).

2) Click the "Inteface manage >Port-channel config >Static link-aggr" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, choose group ID "1", load balance mode "Src &Dst Mac", and choose the port ge1/1, ge1/2 & ge1/3, click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| C Add<br>Group ID Type Status Load balance mode Port member | han |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| C Add                                                       |     |
|                                                             |     |
| tatic link-aggr Port Config. LACP LACPStatus LACPstatistics |     |

2 ) Configure ge1/4 port enable VLAN10 go through, ge1/5 port enable VLAN20 go through(SwitchB is the same as SwitchA). Click the "Business manage >VLAN config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input VLAN ID "10", check port list "ge1/4", click "add"; input VLAN ID "20", check port list "ge1/5", click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| rt Config | VlanApply    | Mac-vlanApply                                                                | Protocol-vlanApply                                                         |                                           |
|-----------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
|           |              | ort list                                                                     |                                                                            | handle                                    |
| 1         | Т            | ntag:<br>ag:                                                                 |                                                                            | ۵.<br>۵                                   |
|           | 9            | e1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27                                                          | /3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12 ge1/<br>ge1/28 | 13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 <sup></sup>       |
| 10        | 9<br>U<br>Ti | vnan:ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1<br>e1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27<br>nntag:<br>ag: ge1/4<br>vnlan: | /3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/5 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12 ge1/<br>ge1/28 | 13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 <sup>-</sup><br>岡 |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



4) Configure port ge1/1, ge1/2 & ge1/3 enable VLAN10 & VLAN20 go through (SwitchB is the same as SwitchA). Click the "Business manage >VLAN config " menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input VLAN ID "10", check port list "ge1/1, ge1/2, ge1/3", click "add"; input VLAN ID "20", check port list "ge1/1, ge1/2, ge1/3", click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Carda Marka    | NAME OF A DESCRIPTION                                                                           | Destant start and                      |                                 |                                         |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Config VlanAt  | ply Mac-vlanApply                                                                               | Protocol-vlanApply                     |                                 |                                         |
| Add            |                                                                                                 |                                        |                                 |                                         |
| ID Description | Port list                                                                                       |                                        |                                 | handle                                  |
|                | Untag:<br>Tag:                                                                                  |                                        |                                 |                                         |
|                | Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 g                                              | ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8<br>e1/28 | 3 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12 ge | 1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 ា             |
| 0              | Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/;<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 g<br>Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/<br>Pvlan: | e1/28                                  | 3 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12 ge | :1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 <sup>面</sup> |

## **4.5.3** Add dynamic link aggregation

#### 1. Interface description

LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) is a protocol to realize dynamic link aggregation, and it is based on IEEE802.3ad standard. LACP communitate with the opposite terminal via LACPDU (Link Aggregation Control Protocol Data Unit).

After enable LACP protocol for one of the port, this port will send LACPDU to the opposite terminal to tell its system priority, system MAC, port priority, port number, & operation key. When the opposite terminal receives this information, it will compare it with the saved information from the other ports, so as to choose the port can be aggregated. These entire make both ports reach an agreement to join or quip on certain dynamic link aggregation group.

: Dynamic LACP is an aggregation created or deleted by the system automatically. Dynamic LACP group port added and deleted is aumatically done by the protocol. Ports will be dynamic aggregated together under below condition: same rate and duplex, connect with the same device, with the same basic configuration. The interface is shown as the following figure:

| atic link-aggr    |        | LACP     | LACPStatus | LACPstatistics |         |              |
|-------------------|--------|----------|------------|----------------|---------|--------------|
| C App<br>PortName | Туре   | Group ID | Mode       | Кеу            | timeout | PortPriority |
| ge1/1             | LACP 🖨 | 1 🕈      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/2             | LACP 🗢 | 1 🗢      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/3             | LACP ≑ | 1 0      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/4             | None 🗢 | 1 🕈      | Active 🗢   | D              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/5             | None 🗢 | 1 🗢      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/6             | None 🗢 | 1 🕈      | Active \$  | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/7             | None 🜩 | 1 🕈      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/8             | None 🗢 | 1 🗢      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast ¢  | 32768        |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



#### 2. Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Туре               | <ul> <li>Static &amp; dynamic LACP</li> <li>Static mode: when need to increase the bandwidth or reliability between the two devices, and one of the device is not supported LACP, we can create static Link aggregation, and add member ports to increase the bandwidth and reliability between the devices.</li> <li>Dynamic LACP mode: Under dynamic LACP mode, there is redundant backup ability between the link of the two devices. When part of the link is breakdown, it adopts backup link to replace the breakdown link, keep the data transmission continued.</li> </ul> |
| Mode               | <ul> <li>Passive: The port will not send LACP message automatically, it only response to the LACP message sent from the opposite terminal.</li> <li>Active: The port send LACP message automatically.</li> <li>One or two active LACP port link support dynamic LACP. If the two ports connecting each other are passive LACP ports, the LACP of these two ports will not working, they are waiting the LACP message from the opposite terminal.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                        |
| Portpriority       | When the LACP confirm the dynamic aggregation group members, it uses<br>the device port ID priority to confirm. The device ID is made of two bytes<br>system priority and 6 bytes system MAC. Device ID=System priority<br>+system MAC address. When compare the ID, it compare the system<br>priority first; if they are the same, it compare the system MAC address, the<br>value smaller will be treated as priority. Scope: 0-65535, default: 32768                                                                                                                            |

#### **3.** Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Interface manage >port channel configuration > port configuration"  |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface.                            |
| Step 2 | Choose the ports to be configured, choose type(LACP), mode(Active or Passive), |
|        | port priority(range: 0-65535, default: 32768), click "add".                    |
| Step 3 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running   |
|        | configuration" for saving the settings.                                        |

Explanation

- 1. Please make sure there is no other member ports in before change Eth-Trunk working mode, otherwise Eth-Trunk working mode can't be changed.
- 2. The working mode in both side should be the same.

#### 4. E.G.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



Configure LACP on two switches, so as to improve the bandwidth and reliability between these two devices, the requirements are as below:

- Both active links with load share ability
- One of the link between two devices are redundant backup link



#### #Configuration steps

1 ) Configure LACP mode on SwitchA (SwitchB is the same as SwitchA). Click the "Interface manage >Port channel config> Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, choose "ge1/1, ge1/2 & ge1/3>LACP>Active", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| atic link-aggr | Port Config | LACP     | LACPStatus | LACPstatistics |         |              |
|----------------|-------------|----------|------------|----------------|---------|--------------|
| САрр           | ly          |          |            |                |         |              |
| PortName       | Туре        | Group ID | Mode       | Кеу            | timeout | PortPriority |
| ge1/1          | LACP 🗢      | 1 🗢      | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🜩  | 32768        |
|                | 1.4.00      | 1 \$     | Active 🗢   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 32768        |
| ge1/2          | LACP 🗢      | 4 -      | Active -   | 2              | ruac 👻  | 02,00        |

3) Configure port priority on SwitchA. Click the "Interface manage >Port channel config> Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, set the portpriority of ge1/1 & ge1/2 to 100, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| itic link-aggr | Port Config | LACP     | LACPStatus | LACPstatistics |         |              |
|----------------|-------------|----------|------------|----------------|---------|--------------|
| C Appl         | ý.          |          |            |                |         |              |
| PortName       | Туре        | Group ID | Mode       | Key            | timeout | PortPriority |
| ge1/1          | LACP 🗢      | 1 🕈      | Active 🔶   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 100          |
|                |             |          |            |                | -       | 100          |
| ge1/2          | LACP 🖨      | 1 🕈      | Active 🜩   | 0              | Fast 🗢  | 100          |

## 4.6 Isolated-port config

The ports in the same isolated-port group can be isolated each other; the ports in the different isolated-port group can't be isloted each other.

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >Isolate-port configuration" menu in the navigation tree to

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



enter the interface, establish isolated group by ticking the ports, click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:



#E.g.: It is shown as the following figure, PC1, PC2 & PC3 belong to VLAN10, user want PC1 & PC2 can't access into each other in VLAN10, PC1 & PC3 can access into each other, PC2 & PC3 can access into each other.



Operation steps

1. Create VLAN, confirm the VLAN which PC are belong to. Click the "Business manage >VLAN configuration >VLAN APPLY" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, add VLAN0, tick ge1/1, ge1/2, ge1/3, click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:



| Current Positic | n : Business M | anage / VLAN Config                                              |                                     |                                                 |                   |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Port Confi      | ig VlanApp     | bly Mac-vlanApply                                                | Protocol-vlanApply                  |                                                 |                   |
| C               | Add            |                                                                  |                                     |                                                 |                   |
| VID D           | Description    | Port list                                                        |                                     |                                                 | handle            |
| 1               |                | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 | /3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/<br>ge1/28 | 7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12 ge1/13 ge1/1 | 4 ge1/15 ge1/16 🛍 |
| 10              |                | Untag:ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1<br>Tag:<br>Polan:                          | /3                                  |                                                 | Ē                 |

2. Configure the Ethernet ports join the VLAN in the right way, so as to enable VLAN packet message get through. Click the "Business manage >VLAN configuration >Port configuration" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, tick ports ge1/1, ge1/2, ge1/3, change the value of PVID into 10, click "apply", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| rent Position : | Business Manage | / VLAN Config |        |                     |        |    |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------|---------------------|--------|----|
| Port Config     | VlanApply       | Mac-vlanApply | Prot   | tocol-vlanApply     |        |    |
| C Ap            | oply            |               |        |                     |        |    |
| Port            | Pvlan           | 1             | InputE | ) <mark>r</mark> op | Filter |    |
| *               | *               |               | *      | ÷                   | *      | ŧ  |
| ge1/1           | 10              |               | None   | ÷                   | Egress | \$ |
| ge1/2           | 10              |               | None   | •                   | Egress | \$ |
| ge1/3           | 10              |               | None   | ÷                   | Egress | ¢  |

3. Configure ge1/1, ge1/2 isolate-port function, click the "Business manage >IGMP-snooping config>IGMP-snooping config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, check port ge1/1 & ge1/2 to establish isolated group, click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Add        |             |        |
|------------|-------------|--------|
| Input port | Output port | handle |
| ge1/1      | ge1/2       | 圇      |
| ge1/2      | ge1/1       | 甸      |

4. Check the configuration result

Current Position Interface Manage / Isolate-port Config

- # PC1 & PC2 can't be ping to each other
- # PC1 & PC3 can be ping to each other
- # PC2 & PC3 can be ping to each other

# **4.7** Port statistics**4.7.1** Interface description

Introduce all the port statistics, user can refresh or clear the statistics.

Attentions : It can't be recovered after statistics is clear. Please consider this before

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



Operation steps

1. Click the "Interface manage >Port statistics >Port stats" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| D Port Manageme   |       | Rate stats     | Port stats Det     | ail port stats             |                |              |              |              |
|-------------------|-------|----------------|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| O Port Managerrie | 28.11 | IQD: pkts drop | ped from input que | eue; OQD: pkts dropped fro | m output queue |              |              |              |
| Storm control     |       | Refresh Time : | 20 Secondo         |                            |                |              |              |              |
| o Port rate-Limit |       | Refresh Time : | : 30 Seconds       |                            |                |              |              |              |
|                   |       | PortName       | IQD(pkts/sec)      | OQD(pkts/sec)              | RX(bits/sec)   | RX(pkts/sec) | TX(bits/sec) | TX(pkts/sec) |
| o Mirror          |       | ge1/1          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
| D Port channel Co | onfig | ge1/2          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
| o Isolate-port Co | nfiq  | ge1/3          | 0                  | 0                          | 3.41K          | 2            | 4.11K        | 2            |
|                   |       | ge1/4          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
|                   |       | ge1/5          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
|                   | ~     | ge1/6          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
|                   | ~     | ge1/7          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
|                   |       | ge1/8          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |
|                   | ~     | ge1/9          | 0                  | 0                          | 0              | 0            | 0            | 0            |

#### Explanation :

Click "Fresh" can get the latest statistics. Click "Clear" can clear all the statistics.

## 4.7.2 Detail port stats

Introduce one of the ports statistics, user can refresh or clear the statistics.

1. Click the "Interface manage >Port statistics >Detail Port stats" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| ate stats Port stats Detail po | rt stats |                   |   |       |
|--------------------------------|----------|-------------------|---|-------|
| ort : ge1/1 +                  |          |                   |   | C Cle |
| ReceiveTotal                   |          | SendTotal         |   |       |
| ReceivePacket num              | 0        | SendPacket num    | 0 |       |
| ReceiveByte num                | 0        | SendByte num      | 0 |       |
| ReceiveUnicast num             | 0        | SendUnicast num   | 0 |       |
| ReceiveMulticast num           | 0        | SendMulticast num | 0 |       |
| ReceiveBroadcast num           | 0        | SendBroadcast num | 0 |       |
| ReceivePause frame             | 0        | SendPause frame   | 0 |       |
| ReceiveDiscard                 | 0        | SendDiscard       | 0 |       |
| ReceiveFCS errors              | 0        | HolDiscard        | 0 |       |
| ReceiveOversize                | 0        |                   |   |       |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



#### Explanation :

Click "Fresh" can get the latest statistics. Click "Clear" can clear all the statistics.

## **5** Business manage

## 5.1 VLAN config

VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) is the virtual LAN. VLAN is a kind of data exchange technology that divides the LAN device logically (attention, not physically) into multiple network segments (or, smaller LANs), so as to realize the virtual workgroup. As shown in the following figure, VLAN divides a physical LAN into multiple logical LANs, each of which is a broadcast domain. Message interaction between hosts in VLAN can be carried out by traditional Ethernet communication mode. If communication is needed between hosts in different VLANs, it must be realized through network layer devices such as routers or three-layer switches and so on.



Compared with traditional Ethernet, VLAN has the following advantages:

- Scope of the broadcast domain controlled: the broadcast messages in the LAN are limited to a VLAN, saving the bandwidth and improving the network processing capability.
- The security of LAN is enhanced: because the message is isolated by the broadcast domain divided by VLAN at the data link layer, the hosts in each VLAN cannot communicate directly. It needs routers or three layer switches and other network layer devices for three-layer forwarding of the message.
- Flexible creation of virtual workgroup: you can create a virtual workgroup across physical network scope using VLAN. When user's physical location is moved within the scope of virtual workgroup, there is no need to change network configuration to access

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us



the network normally.

In other words, those in the same VLAN can communicate with each other, and those in the different VLAN cannot communicate with each other. A VLAN is identified by a VLAN ID, and those with the same VLAN ID belong to the same VLAN.

## 5.1.1 VLAN apply

#### a. Create new VLAN operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config > VLAN apply" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage 🗸 🗸                 | Current Position : | Business Manage | / VLAN Config |           |             |        |    |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|--------|----|
| Business Manage                      | Port Config        | VlanApply       | Mac-vlanApply | Protoco   | I-vlanApply |        |    |
| o VLAN Config                        | C Ap               | ply             |               |           |             |        |    |
| o MAC Config                         | Port               | Pvla            | n             | InputDrop |             | Filter |    |
| o Spanning-tree Config               | *                  | ÷               |               | * *       |             |        | ÷  |
|                                      | ge1/1              | ň               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | \$ |
| <ul> <li>ERPS-Ring Config</li> </ul> | ge1/2              | 1               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | \$ |
| o UTRING Config                      | ge1/3              | 1               |               | None 🕈    |             | Egress | •  |
| O L2 mcast-config                    | ge1/4              | 1               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | \$ |
| o MLD-snooping Config                | ge1/5              | 1               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | +  |
| o QOS Config                         | ge1/6              | 1               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | •  |
| o LLDP Config                        | ge1/7              | 1               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | ٠  |
| o ccon comg                          | ge1/8              | 1               |               | None 🗢    |             | Egress | \$ |
| admin Logout                         | 1/0                | 1               |               | Nono +    |             | Earner |    |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| VLANID             | Have to check, specified added VLAN ID, scope:1-4094. E.g.:   |
|                    | 1-3, 5, 7, 9. Default is VLAN 1, when create new will not use |
|                    | VLAN1.                                                        |
| Untag              | Untag                                                         |
| tag                | Tag                                                           |
| Multicast          | Have to check, specified multicast, default is Flood-unknown  |

#### 802.1Q introduction

Trunk config: Trunk type ports are used for connecting with other switches. It is mainly connecting with the main line link. Trunk port enable frame from multiple VLAN to go through. The packing protocol of Trunk link is IEEE 802.1q. IEEE 802.1q is a formal standard of virtual bridged LAN. It makes some update on Ethernet frame format, which add 4 bytes 802.1q Tag between source MAD address field and protocol type field.

802.1q frame format



| 6bytes                 | 6bytes         | 4byte         | s 2byt      | es 4     | 6-1500bytes | 4bytes |
|------------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|----------|-------------|--------|
| Destination<br>address | Source address | 802.10<br>Tag | Leng<br>Typ |          | Data        | FCS    |
|                        | /              |               |             |          |             |        |
|                        | TP             | ID PF         | RI CFI      | VID      |             |        |
|                        | Park (MARK)    | 1             | a           | 11:00/10 |             |        |

2bytes 3bits 1bit 12bits

|       | ouz. To Tag explanations |                            |                                            |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Field | Length                   | Item                       | Meaning                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| TPID  | 2bytes                   | Tag Protocol Identifier    | When the value is 0x8100, it mean          |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | 802.1q Tag frame. If the device not        |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | supported 802.1q receive the frame, it     |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | will discarded                             |  |  |  |  |  |
| PRI   | 3bits                    | Priority                   | Scope::0-7, the value is bigger, the       |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | priority is higher. When it is used as the |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | block of the switch, it sends the higher   |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | priority frame first.                      |  |  |  |  |  |
| CFI   | 1bit                     | Canonical Format Indicator | "0" CFI means typical format; "1" CFI      |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | means untypical format. It is compatible   |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | with Ethernet & token ring network. In     |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | Ethernet, the CFI is "0".                  |  |  |  |  |  |
| VID   | 12bits                   | VLAN ID                    | VLAN ID scope:0-4095. 0 & 4095 are         |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | the retention value, the valid VLAN ID     |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |                          |                            | scope is : 1-4094                          |  |  |  |  |  |

The sending data of each switch supports 802.1q contains VLAN ID, so as to indicate that the switch belongs to which VLAN. There are two styles for Ethernet frame in a VLAN network:

- Tagged frame : Added 4 bytes 802.1q Tag frame
- Untagged frame : Original, without adding 4 bytes 802.1q Tag frame
- Trunk port is used for connecting other switches; it connects with the main link. Trunk port allows frame from different VLAN to go through.
- 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

802.10 Tag explanations

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : Business Manage / VLAN Config |           |                                                                                                                                                               |                                |                    |  |        |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|--|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Po                                               | rt Config | VlanApp                                                                                                                                                       | ly Mac-vlanApply               | Protocol-vlanApply |  |        |  |  |  |  |
|                                                  | C Ad      | d                                                                                                                                                             |                                |                    |  |        |  |  |  |  |
|                                                  | VID Desc  | ription                                                                                                                                                       | Port list                      |                    |  | handle |  |  |  |  |
|                                                  | 1         | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvtan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12 ge1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/1<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 ge1/28 |                                |                    |  |        |  |  |  |  |
|                                                  | 10        |                                                                                                                                                               | Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/4<br>Pvlan: |                    |  | 圃      |  |  |  |  |
|                                                  | 20        |                                                                                                                                                               | Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/5<br>Pvlan: |                    |  | 圃      |  |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.


# 5.1.2 Port config

1. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config >Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port Config | VlanApply | Mac-vlanApply | Protocol-vlanA | vlaa                                                     |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
|             | ply       |               |                | δ. δ. < <i>δ</i> . / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / |
| Port        | Pvla      | in            | InputDrop      | Filter                                                   |
| *           | ÷.        |               | * \$           | * \$                                                     |
| ge1/1       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🗢                                                 |
| ge1/2       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🗢                                                 |
| ge1/3       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🖨                                                 |
| ge1/4       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🗢                                                 |
| ge1/5       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🗢                                                 |
| ge1/6       | 1         |               | None 🔶         | Egress 🖨                                                 |
| ge1/7       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🗢                                                 |
| ge1/8       | 1         |               | None 🗢         | Egress 🖨                                                 |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                               |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PVID               | Each port only can get one VLAN ID(PVID). When the untage             |
|                    | Ethernet message packet were sent to the port, it will be marked with |
|                    | PVID VID tag. The default PVID of each port is 1.                     |
| Inputdrop          | Mode: none (not drop), untag(drop without tag message), tag (drop     |
|                    | all the tag message), all (drop all lthe message)                     |
| Filter             | Mode: egress, ingress, both, none                                     |
|                    |                                                                       |

### 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

Current Position : Business Manage / VLAN Config

| ort Config | VlanApply | Mac-vlanApply | Protocol- | vlanApply |        |   |
|------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|-----------|--------|---|
| С Ар       | ply       |               |           |           |        |   |
| Port       | Pvla      | n             | InputDrop | Filt      | эr     |   |
| *          | *         |               | * +       | *         | ÷      | ; |
| ge1/1      | 10        |               | None 🜩    | Eg        | ress   | ŧ |
| ge1/2      | 10        |               | None 🗢    | Eg        | ress : | ¢ |
| ge1/3      | 10        |               | None 🖨    | Ed        | ress : | ŧ |

#E.G.

To make the link between SwitchA & SwitchB not only supports the communication for the users in VLAN2, but also supports the users in VLAN3, it needs to config the ports join these two VLAN at the same time: set the Ethernet port ge1/3 of SwitchA and the port ge1/3 of SwitchB join VLAN & VLAN3 at the same time.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.





Operation steps:

1. Create VLAN2 & VLAN3 on SwitchA, and join the connecting ports into VLAN, set ge1/3 into Trunk mode. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config>Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, fill the config items. The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port  | Pvlan | InputDrop     | Filter   |  |
|-------|-------|---------------|----------|--|
| *     | *     | * •           | * •      |  |
| ge1/1 | 2     | None <b>T</b> | Egress 🔻 |  |
| ge1/2 | 3     | None 🔻        | Egress 🔻 |  |

2. Config SwitchA & SwitchB connecting port & VLAN. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, fill the config items, click "add"(SwitchB is the same as SwitchA). Below figure is shown as how to add VLAN2:

| /ID     | Description    | Multicast     | Port list                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1       |                | flood-unknown | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12<br>ge1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 ge1/17 ge1/18 ge1/19 ge1/20 ge1/21 ge1/22 ge1/23 ge1/24<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 ge1/28 |
| 2       |                | flood-unknown | Untag: ge1/1<br>Tag: ge1/3<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| +al 2 E | ntry 20 entrys | nar naga      | 1/1Page I Go                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

### 3. Result

Config User1 & User2 in the same network segment, e.g.: 192.168.100.0/24; config User3 & User4 in the same network segment, e.g.: 192.168.200.0/24

User1 & User2 can be ping each other , but not for User3 & User4. User3 & User4 can be pin each other, but not for User1 & User2.

# **5.1.3 MAC-VLAN**

VLAN based on MAC, it divides VLAN according to the MAD address of the PC network card. Administrator configures MAC address & VLAN ID mapping relationship table; if the frame which switch received is untagged, it add VLAN ID according to the table.

The advantage is: when the physical location of end user is changed, there is no need to relocate VLAN. This enhances the safety and access flexibility. The disadvantage is: It is

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



suitable for the simple environment that there is no need to change the network card, and it has to define all the members in the network advanced.

### Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config>mac-vlan config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage 🛛 🗸   | Current Position : | Business Manage | / VLAN Config   |                     |        |                                 |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|--------|---------------------------------|
| Business Manage 🖍      | Port Config        | VlanApply       | Mac-vlanApply   | Protocol-vlanApply  |        |                                 |
| o VLAN Config          | C Add              | i)              |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o MAC Config           | SerialNum          | MAC             |                 | Vlan ID             | handle |                                 |
| o Spanning-tree Config |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o UTRING Config        |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o L2 mcast-config      |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o MLD-snooping Config  |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o QOS Config           |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| o LLDP Config          | Jump               | ок              |                 | «« «                | 1 > >> | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |
|                        |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| Addvlan                |                    |                 |                 |                     | ×      |                                 |
|                        |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| MAC                    | . [                |                 | _               |                     |        |                                 |
| MAC                    | eg:00:01:02:0      | 13-04-05        |                 |                     |        |                                 |
|                        |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
| Vlan ID                |                    |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
|                        | mode               | 4. The ports    | i must beiong t | o the vlan in untag |        |                                 |
|                        | Antel              |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |
|                        | Add                |                 |                 |                     |        |                                 |

### Explanations

| Configuration | Meaning                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                                                                                                                          |
| VLAN ID       | Necessary option, scope: 1-4094, e.g.: 1-3, 5, 7, 9.Default is VLAN<br>1. Other VLAN is necessary and add the link port under untag way. |
| MAC           | Necessary option, input the MAC address of the PC network card.                                                                          |

### 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| SerialNum      | Vlan ID           | MAC               |             |    |       |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------|----|-------|
| 1              | 10                | 00:01:00:01:00:01 | Delete      |    |       |
| otal 1 Entry 2 | 0 entrys per page |                   | 1/1Page 🗐 🔳 | Go | 1- 1- |

### #E.G.

<sup>o</sup> A company has high requirement on information security; it only allows PCs from its company can access to the company Internet. As shown in the figure, port ge1/1 of the switch connects with the uplink port of SwitchA. The downstream ports of SwitchA connect with PC1, PC2 & PC3 respectively. It allows PC1, PC2 & PC3 can access to the company Internet via SwitchA & Switch.

Configuration: It adopts below configuration which based on MAC address to devide VLAN: 1. Create relative VLAN

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



2. Config each Ethernet ports to join VLAN in the right way.

3. Config the MAC address of PC1, PC2 & PC4 to connect with VLAN

Below data needs to be prepared:

Set port ge1/1 PVID of the switch as "100"

Set port ge1/1 of the switch join VLAN10 under "untagged" mode

Set port ge1/2 of the switch join VLAN10 under "tagged" mode

All the ports of the switchA join VLAN1 under "untagged" mode

Ge the MAC address of PC1, PC2 & PC3, config the MAC address connect with VLAN10



Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage>VLAN config> Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, choose ge1/1, input PVID "100", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port  | Pvlan | InputDrop | Filter   |  |
|-------|-------|-----------|----------|--|
| *     | 2     | * •       | *        |  |
| ge1/1 | 100   | None 🔻    | Egress 🔻 |  |

2. Click the "Business manage>VLAN config> VLAN apply" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input VLAN ID "10", check port ge1/1 in untag port list, check ge1/2 in Tag port list, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| VID   | Description    | Multicast     | Port list                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1     |                | flood-unknown | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12<br>ge1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 ge1/17 ge1/18 ge1/19 ge1/20 ge1/21 ge1/22 ge1/23 ge1/24<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 ge1/28 |
| 10    |                | flood-unknown | Untag: ge1/1<br>Tag: ge1/2<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| tal 2 | Entry 20 entry | s per page    | 1/1Page 💷 🖌 🖌                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

3. Set all the ports of the SwitchA join VLAN under "untagged" mode. There is no need to operate this, the default setting of the switch is: all the ports join VLAN1 under "untagged" mode.

4. Set the MAC address of PC1, PC2 & PC3 to be connected with VLAN. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config >MAC-VLAN config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input the created VLAN ID with VLAN10, then input the MAC address of PC1

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



(0022-0022-0022), PC2 (0033-0033-0033), PC3 (0044-0044-0044), click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| SerialNum | Vlan ID | MAC               |        |
|-----------|---------|-------------------|--------|
| 1         | 10      | 00:22:00:22:00:22 | Delete |
| 2         | 10      | 00:33:00:33:00:33 | Delete |
| 2         | 10      | 00:44:00:44:00:44 | Delete |

#### 5. Check the result

PC1, PC2, PC3 are enable to access the company network, other PCs are no access to the network.

# 5.1.4 Protocol-VLAN

Divide VLAN based on protocol, it distributes different VLAN ID according to the packing format and the protocol which received message belongs to.

Administrator needs to configure the protocol field of the Ethernet frame & VLAN ID mapping relationship table. If the frame received is untagged, it adds VLAN ID according to the table. The advantage is: it divides VLAN based on protocol and binds the service type & VLAN from network. It is convenient for management. The disadvantage is: it needs to initial the configuration of the protocol type & VLAN ID; it needs to analyze the address format of each protocol, and makes relative conversion. This cost lots of resource of the switch, lower the speed.

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config> protocol-vlan config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:





| AddVlan based on p | rotocol           |          |          |             |                | ×            |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------|----------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
|                    |                   | 1101     |          |             |                |              |
| Port               | ge1/1             | +        |          |             |                |              |
| Frame-type         | ether2            | \$       |          |             |                |              |
| Ether-type         | arp               | ÷        |          |             |                |              |
| Vlan ID            |                   |          |          |             |                |              |
|                    | scope:1-40<br>Add | 94.The p | orts mus | st belong f | to the vlan ir | ) untag mode |

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Port               | Choose port ge1/1- ge1/24, xe1/25- xe1/28                                                       |
| Frame-type         | With optional, frame-type includes: ether2, 802.3, snap, llc, snap-priv                         |
| Ethernet-type      | With optional, Ethernet-type:arp, ip,ipv6,802.1d.1q, 802.1d.1x                                  |
| Vlan Id            | Necessary option, join specified VLAN ID, scope: 1-4094. E.g.: 1-3, 5, 7, 9. Default is VLAN 1. |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| SerialNum | Port  | Frame-type | Ether-type | Vlan ID |        |
|-----------|-------|------------|------------|---------|--------|
| 1         | ge1/1 | ether2     | ip         | 1       | Delete |
| 2         | ge1/2 | ether2     | іруб       | 1       | Delete |

E.G.: PC1 & PC3 access to each other, the communication protocol is IPV4, bind IPV4 protocol with VLAN10. PC2 & PC4 access to each other, the communication is IPV6, bind IPV6 protocol with VLAN20.

VLAN diagram:





### Operation steps

1. Create VLAN, confirm the VLAN every business belongs to. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, modify the PVID value, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port  | Pvlan | InputDrop     | Filter   |  |
|-------|-------|---------------|----------|--|
| *     | *     | * •           | *        |  |
| ge1/1 | 1     | None <b>T</b> | Egress 🔻 |  |
| ge1/2 | 10    | None 🔻        | Egress 🔻 |  |
| ge1/3 | 20    | None 🔻        | Egress 🔻 |  |

2. Config Ethernet port ge1/2 & ge1/3 of the SwitchA join the VLAN under "untag" mode. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input VLAN ID "10", choose ge1/2 in "Untag port list"; input VLAN ID "20", choose ge1/3 in "Untag port list". The interface is shown as the following figure:

| VID | Description | Multicast                    | Port list                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----|-------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   |             | floo <mark>d-un</mark> known | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12<br>ge1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 ge1/17 ge1/18 ge1/19 ge1/20 ge1/21 ge1/22 ge1/23 ge1/24<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 ge1/28 |
| 10  |             | floo <mark>d-un</mark> known | Untag: ge1/2<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 20  |             | flood-unknown                | Untag: ge1/3<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                            |

Total 3 Entry 20 entrys per page

- 3. Config the Ethernet port ge1/2 & ge1/3 join VLAN under "untag" mode (The operation is the same as above).
- 4. Config port ge1/1 of the SwitchA join VLAN1- & VLAN20 under "tagged" mode. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input VLAN ID "10", choose ge1/1 in "tag port list", click "add"; input VLAN ID "20", choose ge1/1 in "tag port list", click "add". The interface is shown as the following figure:



| VID Desc    | ription Multicast                | Port list                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1           | flood-unknown                    | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12<br>ge1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 ge1/17 ge1/18 ge1/19 ge1/20 ge1/21 ge1/22 ge1/23 ge1/24<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 ge1/28 |
| 10          | <mark>flood-unknown</mark>       | Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/1<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 20          | flood-unknown                    | Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/1<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| tal 3 Entry | 20 entrys pe <mark>r page</mark> | 1/1Page 🗐 🚽 🛛 🖌 🖌 🖌 🖌 🖌 🖌 🖌                                                                                                                                                                                               |

5. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config>protocol-vlan apply" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input relative value, bind VLAN10 with ipv4, & bind VLAN20 with ipv6, click "add". The interface is shown as the following figure:

| SerialNum     | Port               | Frame-type | Ether-type | Vlan ID     |        |
|---------------|--------------------|------------|------------|-------------|--------|
| 1             | ge1/2              | ether2     | ip         | 10          | Delete |
| 2             | ge1/3              | ether2     | іруб       | 20          | Delete |
| tal 2 Entry 2 | 20 entrys per page |            |            | 1/1Page 🔍 🔍 | Go 🕨 🛤 |

# **5.2**MAC config

The main function of an Ethernet switch is to forward the message in the data link layer, that is, according to the destination MAC address of the message to output the message to the appropriate port. The MAC address forwarding list is a layer 2 forwarding list that contains the correspondence between the MAC address and the forwarding port. It is the basis of Ethernet switch to realize fast forwarding of layer 2 message.

The list of MAC address contains the following information:

- Destination MAC address
- VLAN ID which the port belongs to
- The forwarding port number of the device

When forwarding the message, Ethernet switch will adopt the following two forwarding modes according to the item information in the MAC address list:

- Unicast mode: when MAC address forwarding list contains corresponding items to the destination MAC address of the message, the switch sends the message directly from the forward port in the table entry.
- Broadcast mode: when the switch receives a message whose destination address is all F, or when the MAC address forwarding list is without an item of corresponding MAC address of the message, the switch will use broadcast mode to forward the message to all ports except the receiving port.

# **5.2.1** MAC config

In this page, you can set the MAC address aging time and view MAC address table information.

To accommodate network changes, the MAC address table needs to be updated constantly. The automatically generated table items in the MAC address table are not always valid. Each table item has a life cycle, and the table items that do not get refreshed after

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



reaching the life cycle will be deleted. This life cycle is called aging time. If the record is refreshed before reaching the lifetime, the aging time of the table item is recalculated.

The MAC address aging function can be effectively implemented by setting the appropriate aging time. If the aging time set by the user is too short, it may cause the switch to broadcast a large number of data packets that cannot find the destination MAC address, and affect the performance of the switch.

If the aging time set by the user is too long, the switch may save many outdated MAC address table entries, thus exhausting the MAC address forwarding resources, resulting in the switch being unable to update the MAC address forwarding as the network changes.

If the aging time set by the user is too short, the switch may remove a valid MAC address table entry, reducing forwarding efficiency.

In general, the recommended default of the aging time is 300 seconds

Operation steps:

1. Click the "business manage > MAC config " menu in the navigation tree to enter the "MAC config" interface.

| Interface Manage 🗸 🗸   | Current Positio | n : Business Mar | nage / MAC Config | 1           |               |         |                                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------|---------------|---------|---------------------------------|
| Business Manage 🖍      | MacList         | Static Mac       | Mac-config        |             |               |         |                                 |
| o VLAN Config          | Port :          | ¢ Cie            | ardynamic Mac     | Clearstatic | Mac One-click | Binding |                                 |
| o MAC Config           | SerialN         | umMAC            |                   | Vid         | Interface     | Туре    |                                 |
| o Spanning-tree Config | 1               | 08:57:00:ec:     | 55:ec             | 1           | ge1/3         | dynamic |                                 |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     |                 |                  |                   |             |               |         |                                 |
| o UTRING Config        |                 |                  |                   |             |               |         |                                 |
| O L2 moast-config      |                 |                  |                   |             |               |         |                                 |
| o MLD-snooping Config  |                 |                  |                   |             |               |         |                                 |
| o QOS Config           |                 |                  |                   |             |               |         |                                 |
| o LLDP Config          | Jump            | ок               |                   |             | « < 1         | > >>    | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |

### MAC limit(port):

| ic Mac Mac-config    |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| Return               |             |
| mac-limit(Max:16383) | Action      |
| *                    | * \$        |
| 16383                | broadcast 🜩 |
| 16383                | broadcast 🗢 |
|                      | Return      |

### MAC limit(vlan):

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| ent Position : Business Manage / MAC Config<br>lacList Static Mac<br>Add Return<br>Add Limit Action hendle<br>Add Limit Vien Id Limit Action hendle<br>Add Limit Vian Id scope: 1-4094<br>Limit count scope: 0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast | Itistic Mac Mac-config   Add Return     SerialNum Vianid   Limit Action   Mac-config     Vianid   scope:1-4094   Limit count   scope:0-16383, defauit is 16383   Action   broadcast                                                    |                              | 1.1110.0.0.1.111.0.0             |           |        |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|--------|--|
| Add Return     SerialNum Vlanid Limit     Add Limit Action     Mdd Limit     Vlan Id     scope:1-4094   Limit count   scope:0-16383, default is 16383   Action                                                                                                                                           | Add Return   SerielNum Vlenkd Limit Action heandle   Add Limit     Add Limit     Action     Vlan ld   scope: 1-4094   Limit count   scope: 0-16383, default is 16383   Action   broadcast   Action if over limit, default is broedcast | nt Position : Business Manaç | MAC Config. / Vlan Config.       |           |        |  |
| SeriellNum Vlanld Limit Action handle     Add Limit     Vlan ld   scope:1-4094   Limit count   scope:0-16383, default is 16383   Action   broadcast                                                                                                                                                      | SerielNum Vienki Limit Action hendle     Cd Limit     Vlan ld   scope:1-4094   Limit count   scope:0-16383, default is 16383   Action   broadcast                                                                                      | acList Static Mac            | Mac-config                       |           |        |  |
| Add Limit × Vian Id scope: 1-4094 Limit count scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast                                                                                                                                                                                                           | dd Limit ★<br>Vlan ld scope: 1-4094<br>Limit count scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast ≑<br>Action if over limit, default is broedcast                                                                                 | Add Return                   |                                  |           |        |  |
| Vlan Id<br>scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast €                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Vlan Id<br>scope: 1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope: 0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                          | SerialNum Vlanld             | Limit                            | Action    | handle |  |
| Vlan ld<br>scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast \$                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Vlan Id<br>scope: 1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope: 0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                          |                              |                                  |           |        |  |
| Vlan ld<br>scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast \$                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Vlan Id<br>scope: 1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope: 0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                          |                              |                                  |           |        |  |
| scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | scope:1-4094 Limit count scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                   | Add Limit                    |                                  |           | ×      |  |
| scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | scope:1-4094 Limit count scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                   |                              | ,                                |           |        |  |
| scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast €                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | scope:1-4094 Limit count scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                   |                              |                                  |           |        |  |
| Scope:1-4094<br>Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | scope:1-4094 Limit count scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                   | Vlan Id                      |                                  |           |        |  |
| Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast \$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Limit count<br>scope:0-16383, default is 16383<br>Action broadcast ♦<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                     |                              |                                  |           |        |  |
| scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | scope:0-16383, default is 16383 Action broadcast ♦ Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                                          |                              | SCOP6:1-4034                     |           |        |  |
| Action broadcast 🗢                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Action broadcast<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                                                                         | Limit count                  |                                  |           |        |  |
| Action broadcast 🗢                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Action broadcast<br>Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                                                                         |                              | soonal0, 16000, default in 16    | 2000      |        |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                                                                                             |                              | scope.u-robob, derault is ro     | 0000      |        |  |
| Action if over limit, default is broadcast                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Action                       | broadcast 🗢                      |           |        |  |
| Actor in over mini, delidar la arcodocase                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                              | Action if over limit, default is | broadcast |        |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Add                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                              | Action in over ninit, default is | 0.0000001 |        |  |
| Add                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                              | Add                              |           |        |  |

| Explanations   |                                                                  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration  | Meaning                                                          |
| item           |                                                                  |
| MAC aging time | Input MAC aging time, default is 300s, scope: 10-1000000s        |
| Mac-limit      | Mac-limit, scope:0-16383, The setting value needs to be modified |
|                | before the setting takes effect.                                 |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add"

# 5.2.2 Static MAC

Static table items are manually configured by the user and sent to the interface board, table items do not age.

Operation steps

1. Click the "business management > MAC config > static MAC" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "static MAC" interface as shown below.

|                                   | age / MAC Config                 |                     |      |        |  |  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|------|--------|--|--|
| List Static Mac                   | Mac-config                       |                     |      |        |  |  |
| dd                                |                                  |                     |      |        |  |  |
| erialNum MAC                      |                                  | Vlan ID             | Port | handle |  |  |
|                                   |                                  |                     |      |        |  |  |
| MAC bind                          |                                  |                     | ×    | -      |  |  |
|                                   |                                  |                     |      |        |  |  |
|                                   |                                  |                     | ^    |        |  |  |
|                                   |                                  |                     | ^    |        |  |  |
| MAC                               | 0.01.02.02.04.05                 | - 0000, 0000, 000   |      |        |  |  |
| MAC g:                            | 10:01:02:03:04:05 a              | <br>r 0000-0000-000 |      |        |  |  |
| MAC<br>eg:<br>Vian ID             |                                  |                     |      |        |  |  |
| MAC<br>eg:<br>Vian ID             | 00:01:02:03:04:05 a<br>pe:1-4094 |                     |      |        |  |  |
| MAC<br>eg:<br>Vian ID             | pe:1-4094                        | r 0000-0000-000     |      |        |  |  |
| MAC egit<br>Vian ID soo<br>Port g | pe:1-4094<br>#1/1 ≑              | r 0000-0000-000     |      |        |  |  |
| MAC egit<br>Vian ID soo<br>Port g | pe:1-4094                        | - 0000-0000-000     |      |        |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Emplanations  |                                                                   |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration | Meaning                                                           |
| item          |                                                                   |
| MAC           | Necessary option, input new create MAC address, such as:H-H-H     |
| Vlan ID       | Necessary option, specified VLAN ID                               |
| Port          | Necessary option, choose the port name, such as : $ge1/3_{\circ}$ |
|               | Remarks The ports should be the member ports of the VLAN          |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add".

# 5.2.3 MAC List

The MAC table is used to store the MAC address, VLAN number, and output interface information of other devices learned by the switch. When forwarding the data, the MAC table is queried according to the destination MAC address and VLAN number in the Ethernet frame to quickly locate the outgoing interface of the device.

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >MAC config >MAC LIST" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage 🛛 🗸   | Current Positio | on : Business Manage / MAC | Config        |                  |         |                                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|---------------|------------------|---------|---------------------------------|
| Business Manage 🖍      | MacList         | Static Mac Mac-con         | fig           |                  |         |                                 |
| o VLAN Config          | Port :          | Cleardynamic M             | lac Clearstat | ic Mac One-click | Binding |                                 |
| o MAC Config           | SerialN         | NumMAC                     | Vid           | Interface        | Туре    |                                 |
| O Spanning-tree Config | 1               | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec          | 1             | ge1/2            | dynamic |                                 |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     |                 |                            |               |                  |         |                                 |
| o UTRING Config        |                 |                            |               |                  |         |                                 |
| O L2 mcast-config      |                 |                            |               |                  |         |                                 |
| o MLD-snooping Config  |                 |                            |               |                  |         |                                 |
| o QOS Config           |                 |                            |               |                  |         |                                 |
| o LLDP Config          | Jump            | ок                         |               | ح ح 1            | > >>    | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |

Explanations

| Item       | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Serial num | Number                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| MAC        | Destination MAC address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Vid        | VLAN ID                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Interface  | Interface number                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Туре       | Dynamic MAC address refers to the MAC address list item that can be aged<br>according to the aging time configured by the user. Switch can add dynamic<br>MAC address list item through MAC address learning mechanism or<br>manually established by the user. |

# **5.3**MSTP config

A switched network is divided into several regions through MSTP and several spanning

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



trees are generated in each region, which are mutually independent. Each spanning tree is called an MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) and each region is called an MST region (Multiple Spanning Tree Region).

MSTP is compatible with STP and RSTP and can make up their defects. It can converge quickly and make different VLAN traffics be forwarded along their respective paths, providing a better load sharing mechanism for the redundant links.

**Protocol** Feature Application STP Without differentiating user or Form a tree without loop, solve broadcast storm and realize redundant business flow, all vlans share a backup. tree. Slow convergence. RSTP Form a tree without loop, solve broadcast storm and realize redundant backup. Fast convergence. **MSTP** Form a tree without loop, solve Have to distinguish user or broadcast storm and realize redundant business flow, and implement backup. load sharing. Different vlans forward flow through different Fast convergence. trees. and each tree is Multiple spanning trees realize load independent from each other. balancing among vlans, and flow of different vlans is forwarded according to different paths.

The comparison is shown in Figure below:

After deploying the spanning tree protocol in the Ethernet switching network, if a loop appears in the network, the spanning tree protocol can be implemented through topology calculation:

- Eliminate the loop: eliminate network communication loop by blocking redundant link
- Link backup: when the current active path failure occurs, it activates the redundancy backup link, so as to restore network connectivity.

# 5.3.1 Global config

Provides the ability to configure STP global parameters, and in some specific network environments, the STP parameters of some devices need to be adjusted for best results. Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >Spanning-tree config> Global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:



| Interface Manage 🗸 🗸                 | Current Position ; | Business Mane | ge / Spanning-tree Config  |                       |                         | ^ |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Business Manage                      | Global Config      | Port Con      | fig Instance Config        | INST-PORT CONFIG      |                         |   |
| O VLAN Config                        | С Арр              | ly -          |                            |                       |                         |   |
| o MAC Config                         | Mode               | ⊖ stp ⊖       | rstp 🧿 mstp                |                       |                         |   |
| O Spanning-tree Config               | Priority           | 32768         | scope:0-61440, Default:327 | 768                   |                         |   |
|                                      | Max age            | 20            | scope:6-40, Default:20 Sec | conds                 |                         |   |
| <ul> <li>ERPS-Ring Config</li> </ul> | Hello time         | 2             | scope:1-10, Default:2 Seco | inds                  |                         |   |
| o UTRING Config                      | Forward delay      | 15            | scope:4-30, Default:15 Sec | conds                 |                         |   |
| O L2 mcast-config                    | Max hop            | 20            | scope:1-40, Default:20     |                       |                         |   |
| o MLD-snooping Config                | Revison            | 0             | scope:0-65535              |                       |                         |   |
| o QOS Config                         | Name               | 90:7E:BA:     | 10:22:18                   |                       |                         |   |
| o LLDP Config                        |                    |               |                            |                       |                         |   |
|                                      | CIST Status        |               |                            |                       |                         |   |
| Contractor I I I I Contractor        | Bridge id          |               | 32768.90-7E-BA-10-2        | 22–18 Designated root | 32768.90-7E-BA-10-22-18 | ~ |

| Configuration | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Enable        | Default is check, means the switch enable spanning-tree                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Spanning-tree |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Mode          | Support STP, RSTP, MSTP mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Priority      | Scope 0-61440, Step order value is $4096_{\circ}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Max age       | Means the max age of the message, range: 6-40s, default is 20s                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Hello time    | Represents the period of message sending. The bridge sends hello                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|               | message to the surrounding bridge at regular intervals to confirm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|               | whether there is a fault in the link. This interval is hello                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Forward Delay | Represents the delay of port state migration, with a range of 4 to 30 seconds and a default of 15 seconds.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Max Hops      | Select the maximum jump number. This value ranges from 1 to 20, with<br>a default value of 20. The maximal jump number of trees in MST<br>domain is used to limit the network size of trees in MST domain.<br>Starting from the root bridge of the generation tree in the MST domain,<br>the jump number is reduced by 1 for each configuration message in the<br>domain forwarded by a switch. The switch will discard the<br>configuration message with the jump number of 0, making the switch<br>outside the maximum jump number unable to participate in the<br>calculation of the generation tree, thus limiting the size of the MST<br>domain. |
| Revision      | MSTP revision level.<br>The revision level of the MSTP is used in conjunction with the domain<br>name and VLAN mapping table to determine the MST domain to which<br>the switch belongs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Name          | MST domain name.<br>The default value is the MAC address of the main control board of the switch.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|               | The domain name of the switch device is used together with the VLAN mapping table of the MST domain and the revision level of the MSTP to determine which domain the switch device can belong to.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |



- 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.
- 3. Click "add".

### E.G.

Through MSTP, a switched network is divided into multiple regions, and multiple spanning trees are formed in each region, and the spanning trees are independent of each other.Each Spanning Tree Instance is called a Multiple Spanning Tree Instance, and each domain is called an MST Region.

Explanation :

An instance is a collection of multiple vlans. By binding multiple vlans to one instance, you can save communication overhead and resource occupancy. The calculation of each instance topology of MSTP is independent of each other, and load balancing can be achieved on these instances. Multiple vlans of the same topology can be mapped to an instance, and the forwarding state of these vlans on the port depends on the state of the port in the corresponding MSTP instance.

It is mapping of one or more vlans to the specified MST instance. One or more vlans can be assigned to one instance of the spanning tree at a time.

Operation steps :

1. Click the "business manage > MSTP config > instance config" menu in the navigation tree, the interface is shown as below.

| Curre | nt Position : B | lusiness Manage / | Spanning-tree Config |                  |  |
|-------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|--|
| GI    | obal Config     | Port Config       | Instance Config      | INST-PORT CONFIG |  |
|       |                 |                   |                      |                  |  |
|       | C Add           |                   |                      |                  |  |
|       | C Add           | Priority          | Vlan Mapped          |                  |  |

Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                        |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MSTI ID            | Scope: 1–63                                                                    |
| Priority           | Sets the priority of the specified instance, which must be a multiple of 4096. |
|                    | Scope: 0 to 65535, default value: 32768.                                       |
| Vlan Mapped        | Input VLAN to be mapped                                                        |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add".

# **5.3.2** Inst-port config

1. Click the "business manage > MSTP config > inst-port config" menu in the navigation tree, the interface is shown as below.



| bal Config | Port Config   | Instance Co  | nfig INST- | PORT CONFIG |       |      |     |             |
|------------|---------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------|------|-----|-------------|
| Apply      |               |              |            |             |       |      |     | MSTID:      |
| Port       | Role          | Status       | Priority   | AdminCost   | Cost  | Edge | P2P | UpTime      |
| *          |               |              | *          | *           |       |      |     |             |
| ge1/1      |               |              | 128        | 0           | 0     | No   | No  | Never       |
| ge1/2      | DesignatedPor | t Forwarding | 128        | 0           | 20000 | Yes  | Yes | 0d 00:04:17 |
| ge1/3      |               |              | 128        | Ø           | 0     | No   | No  | Never       |
| ge1/4      |               |              | 128        | 0           | 0     | No   | No  | Never       |
| ge1/5      |               |              | 128        | 0           | 0     | No   | No  | Never       |
| ge1/6      |               |              | 128        | 0           | 0     | No   | No  | Never       |
| ge1/7      |               |              | 128        | 0           | 0     | No   | No  | Never       |

| Configuration | Meaning                                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                                                             |
| MSTID         | Select the configured instance from the drop-down menu                      |
| Port          | Fixed value, displayed according to user selection, do not support multiple |
|               | selections.                                                                 |
| Enable        | Fixed value, displayed according to user selection, do not support multiple |
|               | selections.                                                                 |
| Instance      | Up to 63 instances can be created                                           |
| Priority      | Select port priority. The smaller the value, the higher the priority.       |
|               | Interface priority can affect the role of the interface on the specified    |
|               | MSTI. Users can configure different priorities for the same interface on    |
|               | different MSTI, so that flow from different VLAN can be forwarded along     |
|               | different physical links, completing the function of sharing load by        |
|               | VLAN.                                                                       |
|               | Note: when interface priorities change, the MSTP recalculates the role of   |
|               | the interface and performs a state migration.                               |
| Admincost     | Enter the path overhead value of the interface. The range of values under   |
|               | IEEE 802.1t standard is 1 ~ 200000000                                       |
| Cost          | The range of value under IEEE 802.1t standard is 1~200000000                |
| Role          | designated, alternated, Disabled                                            |
| Status        | Discarding or forwarding                                                    |
|               |                                                                             |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add".

# 5.3.3 Port config

In some specific network environments, the STP parameters of some switch device interfaces need to be adjusted for best results.

1. Click the "Business manage >MSTP config> port config" menu in the navigation tree to

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



### enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| bal Config | g Port Con | fig Instanc | e Config | INST-PORT CO   | NFIG          |            |                |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|----------|----------------|---------------|------------|----------------|-------------|
| C A        | pply       |             |          |                |               |            |                |             |
| Port       | Enable     | AdminEdge   | AutoEdge | restrictedRole | restrictedTcn | BPDU Guard | Point-to-Point | Loop detect |
| *          | * \$       | *           | * \$     | * \$           | •             | *          | * \$           | *           |
| ge1/1      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto.          |             |
| ge1/2      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto 🗢         |             |
| ge1/3      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto 🗢         |             |
| ge1/4      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto 🗢         |             |
| ge1/5      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto 🗢         |             |
| ge1/6      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto 🗢         |             |
| ge1/7      |            |             |          |                |               |            | Auto 🗢         |             |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Port               | No option. Port list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Enable             | Select enable opening port configuration or not. There are two choices of to check and not to check. The default is not to check.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| BPDU Guard         | Select whether to turn on the protection function of BPDU. There<br>are two choices of to check and not to check. The default is not to<br>check. When the BPDU protection function is enabled on the<br>device, if the edge interface receives the BPDU, the device will<br>close these interfaces and notify the network management system.<br>The closed interfaces can only be restored manually by network<br>administrators.                                                                                                                                                    |
| Edge               | Edge ports should be directly connected to the user terminal, not<br>another switch or network segment. Edge ports can quickly transit<br>to a forward state, because on edge ports, changes in network<br>topology do not create loops. By setting a port to an edge port, the<br>spanning tree protocol allows it to transit quickly to the forward<br>state. It is recommended that Ethernet ports connected directly to<br>the user terminal be configured as edge ports so that they can<br>quickly transit to the forward state.<br>Choose Force True, Force False & automation |
| Point-to-Point     | Choose Force True, Force False & automation<br>Indicates the state that automatically detection which the port is<br>set to default if connected to a point-to-point link<br>Force-true<br>Indicates that a particular port is connected to a point-to-point<br>link.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



| Force-false<br>Indicates that a particular port is not connected to a point-to-point<br>link. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                               |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add".

# E.G.

SwitchA, SwitchB, SwitchC, and SwitchD all run MSTP.MSTP introduces multiple instances for VLAN10 and VLAN20 flow load sharing. MSTP can set the VLAN mapping table to associate the VLAN with the generated tree instance, instance 1 mapping to VLAN10, and instance 2 mapping to VLAN20.



### Operation steps

1. Add the ports which connect in the LINK into VLAN. Click the "Business manage >VLAN config >VLAN apply" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, allow VLAN10 & VLAN20 via Trunk, tick the Tag list "ge1/1、ge1/2", click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:



| ID D | Description | Multicast     | Port list                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------|-------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    |             | flood-unknown | Untag:<br>Tag:<br>Pvlan: ge1/1 ge1/2 ge1/3 ge1/4 ge1/5 ge1/6 ge1/7 ge1/8 ge1/9 ge1/10 ge1/11 ge1/12<br>ge1/13 ge1/14 ge1/15 ge1/16 ge1/17 ge1/18 ge1/19 ge1/20 ge1/21 ge1/22 ge1/23 ge1/24<br>ge1/25 ge1/26 ge1/27 ge1/28 |
| 10   |             | flood-unknown | Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/1 ge1/2<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 20   |             | flood-unknown | Untag:<br>Tag: ge1/1 ge1/2<br>Pvlan:                                                                                                                                                                                      |

2. Configure SwitchA, SwitchB, SwitchC & SwitchD into the domain name RUNDATA. Click the "Business manage >MSTP config >Global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| introation .     | V         | -9e /   | Spanning-tree Config    |                  |
|------------------|-----------|---------|-------------------------|------------------|
| lobal Config     | Port Co   | nfig    | Instance Config         | INST-PORT CONFIG |
| C Appl           | У         |         |                         |                  |
| Mode             | ⊖ stp ⊖   | rstp (  | o mstp                  |                  |
| Priority         | 32768     | scop    | pe:0–61440, Default:32  | 768              |
| Max age          | 20        | scop    | pe:6–40, Default:20 Sec | conds            |
| Hello time       | 2         | scop    | pe:1–10, Default:2 Seco | onds             |
| Forward<br>delay | 15        | scot    | pe:4–30, Default:15 Sec | conds            |
| Max hop          | 20        | scop    | pe:1–40, Default:20     |                  |
| Revison          | 0         | sco     | pe:0-65535              |                  |
| Name             | 90:7E:BA: | 10:22:1 | 18                      |                  |

3. Create MSTI1 & MSTI2. Click the "Business manage >MSTP config >Instance config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, input related data, click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Instance | Priority            | Vlan Mapped       |        |
|----------|---------------------|-------------------|--------|
| 0        | 3276 <mark>8</mark> | 1-9 11-19 21-4094 |        |
| 1        | 32768               | 10                | Delete |
| 2        | 32768               | 20                | Delete |

4. In RUNDATA, configure MSTI1 & MSTI2 root bridge & backup root bridge, configure switchA as the root bridge of MSTI1, SwitchA as the backup bridge of MSTI2. Click the "Business manage >MSTP config >Instance config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure

| Instance | Priority<br>32768 | Vlan Mapped<br>1-9 11-19 21-4094 |        |
|----------|-------------------|----------------------------------|--------|
| ,        | 52706             | 1-9 11-19 21-4094                |        |
| 1        | 0                 | 10                               | Delete |
| 2        | 32768             | 20                               | Delete |

Attentions :

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



When configuring SwitchA, change the priority of MSTI1 to 0 and the priority of MSTI2 to 4096.

When configuring SwitchB, change the priority of MSTI1 to 4096 and the priority of MSTI2 to 0. The configuration method is the same as SwitchA and will not be repeated.

The priority must be a multiple of 4096

4. In the domain RUNDATA, configure the root bridge and backup root bridge of MSTI1 and MSTI2. Configure SwitchB as the root bridge of MSTI2, and the backup root bridge of MSTI1.

5. After above configuration, the network is pruned into tree, so as to eliminate the loop.

# 5.4 ERPS config

ERPS (Ethernet Ring Protection Switching) is a protocol for Ethernet link layer loop breaking. It takes the ERPS ring as the basic unit and contains several nodes. By blocking the RPL Owner port and controlling other normal ports, the port state can be switched between Forwarding and STP ding to eliminate the loop. At the same time, we use control VLAN, data VLAN and protection instance mechanism to better realize the function of ERPS.

As shown in the figure below, CE is connected to A-Ring network composed of LSW1 ~ LSW4.Such access mode can make the network have certain reliability, but in order to eliminate the loop in the network and effectively ensure the link connectivity, it needs to start a loop breaking mechanism.



### Port role

There are three types of port roles in ERPS protocol: RPL owner port, RPL neighbor port and general port. RPL Neighbor is a port type supported by ERPSv2, but not by V1.

RPL owner port

An ERPS ring has only one RPL Owner, as determined by user configuration. The RPL Owner port is blocked to prevent the creation of a loop in the ERPS ring.

When the device where the RPL owner is located receives a fault message and learns that other nodes or links on the ERPS ring fail, it will automatically open the RPL owner port,

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



and this port will resume the receiving and sending of traffic to ensure that the traffic will not be interrupted.

The Link where the RPL Owner is located is known as the Ring Protection Link.

• RPL neighbor port

A RPL neighbor is a port directly connected to the RPL owner port.

Normally, both the RPL Owner port and the RPL Neighbor port are blocked to prevent the creation of a loop.

When the ERPS ring fails, both the RPL Owner port and the RPL Neighbor port are released. The RPL neighbor port role is introduced to reduce the number of FDB entries flushed by the device that hosts the RPL neighbor port.

Common Port

In the ERPS ring, all ports other than RPL Owner and RPL Neighbor are normal

Common ports are responsible for monitoring the link state of their directly connected ERPS protocol and notifying other ports of changes in link state.

### Control the VLAN

ports.

In the ERPS ring, the control VLAN is used to deliver ERPS protocol messages.

Each ERPS ring must be configured to control the VLAN. When a port joins the ERPS ring that has been configured to control the VLAN, the port will automatically join the control VLAN.

Different ERPS rings cannot use the same ID to control the VLAN.

In contrast to a control VLAN, a data VLAN is used to transmit data packets.

# 5.4.1 ERPS configuration information displayed

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage > ERPS config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage 🗸 🗸   | osition: Business Mana | ge / ERPS-Ring Config |        |      |          |        |
|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
| Business Manage        | Add                    |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o VLAN Config          | ng-Id Ring stat        | u Port 0              | Port 1 | Role | RPL port | handle |
| o MAC Config           |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o Spanning-tree Config |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o UTRING Config        |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o L2 moast-config      |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o MLD-snooping Config  |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o QOS Config           |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| o LLDP Config          |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
|                        |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| admin Lodout           |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| Explanations           |                        |                       |        |      |          |        |
| Configuration          | Mea                    | ning                  |        |      |          |        |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| item       |                                            |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Ring- Id   | ERPS ring ID                               |
| Ring state | ERPS Ring state (protected, idle, PENDING) |

# **5.4.2** Add ERPS

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage > ERPS config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Add ERPS-Ring Config |                 |       |          |             |          |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  | × |
|----------------------|-----------------|-------|----------|-------------|----------|--------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|-------|--|---|
| Ring-Id              | 1 🕈             |       |          |             |          |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |
| Port 0               | ge1/1           | ŧ     | RPL      | None        | ÷        |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |
| Port 1               | ge1/1           | ÷     | RPL      | None        | ÷        |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |
| Control Vlan         | 1               |       |          |             |          |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |
|                      |                 | mus   | t added  | to both p   | orts i   | in tag | g mo    | de.     |        |         |         |       |  |   |
| Wtr Timeout          | 1<br>In minute  | as 1- | 12, defa | iult is 1 π | inute    | IS.    |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |
| Guard Timeout        | 500             |       |          |             |          |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |
|                      | In millise      | cond  | s 100-2  | 000 in th   | inci     | reme   | ants d  | of 100  | Oms,   | defau   | lt is 5 | 00ms. |  |   |
| Hold Timeout         | 0<br>In millise |       | - 0-100  | 00 in the   | incre    |        | the est | F 1.00- | me d   | - fault | ie O    |       |  |   |
| Version              | 2 \$            |       | a 0-100  | 00 10 016   | in ici e | 211121 |         |         | ina, u | eraun   | ia u.   |       |  |   |
|                      | Add             |       | Return   |             |          |        |         |         |        |         |         |       |  |   |

### Explanations

| Explanations       |                                                                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration item | Meaning                                                               |
| Ring- Id           | ERPS ring ID                                                          |
| Port role          | RPL Neighbor\Owner\none                                               |
| Control vlan       | Control vlan                                                          |
| Wtr Timeout        | When the RPL Owner port is released due to the fault of other         |
|                    | devices or links, if the fault is restored, and some ports may not be |
|                    | changed from Down state to Up state, in order to prevent blocking     |
|                    | the RPL Owner port immediately and causing blocking point             |
|                    | shock, when the RPL Owner port receives the NR RAPS message           |
|                    | of a certain port, Start the WTR Timer, and close the WTR Timer       |
|                    | if it receives a SF RAPS message from another port before the         |
|                    | Timer timeouts. If no SF RAPS message is received on any other        |
|                    | port before the WTR Timer timeouts, the RPL Owner port is             |
|                    | blocked and the NRRB RAPS message is sent after the WTR               |
|                    | Timer timeouts. Other ports will set the Forwarding state of          |
|                    | their                                                                 |
|                    | ports to Forwarding state after receiving the article.                |
| Guard Timeout      | The device involved in a link or node failure sends NR RAPS           |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



|              | packets to other devices after recovery or cleanup operation and       |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              | starts Guard Timer at the same time. The purpose is to prevent the     |
|              | receipt of expired NR RAPS packets before the Timer timeout. If        |
|              | the NR message sent by other ports can be received after the timer     |
|              | timeout, the Forwarding state of this port will change to              |
|              | Forwarding state.                                                      |
| Hold Timeout | For the two-layer network running ERPS, the order of protection        |
|              | reversal may have different requirements. For example, in the          |
|              | application of multi-layer service, after the server failure, the user |
|              | may want to recover the server failure for a period of time, but the   |
|              | client can not perceive the fault, that is, the protection reversal    |
|              | will not be carried out immediately. The appropriate Holdoff           |
|              | Timer can be set so that when a malfunction occurs, the                |
|              | malfunction is not immediately reported to the ERPS, and only if       |
|              | themalfunction                                                         |
|              | fails to recover after the Holdoff Timer has timed out.                |
| Version      | Version V2、V1                                                          |

# **5.5**A-Ring config

# 5.5.1 Overview

## 5.5.1.1 Node type

A-Ring ring physically corresponds to an Ethernet topology connected in A-Ring manner. The role of the A-Ring ring is decided by the user through configuration.

### Master

Master is a main decision and control node on the A-Ring ring. There must be a Master on each A-Ring only.

Each switch on the Ethernet ring is called a node and there must be one Master on each A-Ring ring only. Master is an initiator of the Polling mechanism (automatic detection mechanism of the ring network state) and decider of operation execution after the network topology is changed.

Master periodically sends the HELLO message from its main port, which is spread on the ring through all Transfers. If the standby port can receive the HELLO message

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



sent by the Master, it means that the ring network link is complete; if it does not receive the HELLO message within the specified time, the ring network link is deemed to be faulty. Master has the following two states:

• Complete State

When all links on the ring network are in an UP state, Master can receive the HELLO message sent by itself from the standby port, it means that Master is in a Complete state. The state of Master reflects the state of the A-Ring ring. Therefore, the A-Ring ring is also in a Complete state. At this moment, Master will block the standby port to prevent the data message from forming a broadcast loop on the ring topology.

• Failed State

When the link on the ring network is in a Down state, Master will be in a Failed state. At this moment, Master will open the standby port to ensure that the communication of all nodes on the ring network will not be interrupted.

### Transfer

Except Master, all other nodes on the ring can be called transmission ports. There may be several Transfers or no Transfer (in fact, such networking is meaningless) on a A-Ring ring.

Each A-Ring ring physically corresponds to an Ethernet topology connected in A-Ring form and the A-Ring ring is identified with an ID expressed in an integer.

Except Master, all other nodes on the A-Ring ring are Transfers, which are responsible for monitoring the state of their directly connected A-Ring link and notifying the Master change in the link. Master will decide how to handle it. The Transfer has 3 states as follows:

• Link-Up State

When Master and standby port of the Transfer are in an UP state, it means that the Transfer is in a Link-Up state.

• Link-Down State

When Master or standby port of the Transfer is in a Down state, it means that the Transfer is in a Link-Down state.

• Preforwarding State

When Master or standby port of the Transfer is in a Preforwarding state, it means that the Transfer is in a Preforwarding state.

When the Transfer in an Link-Up state detects that the main port or standby port has link Down, it will move from an Link-Up state to an Link-Down state and send an Link-Down message to notify Master.

The Transfer will not directly move from the Link-Down state to the Link-Up state. When some port of the Transfer in the Link-Down state has link Up and the main port and standby port recover to the Up accordingly, the Transfer will move to the Preforwarding state and block the recovered port.

At the moment when the main and standby ports of the Transfer, Master cannot be informed of it immediately. Therefore, the standby port is still in an Up state. If the Transfer immediately moves to the Link-Up state immediately, it will necessarily cause the data message to form a broadcast loop on the ring network. Therefore, the



Transfer first moves from the Link-Down state to the Preforwarding state.

When the Transfer in a Preforwarding state receives the COMPLETE-FLUSH-FDB message sent by Master, it will move to the Link-Up state. If the COMPLETE-FLUSH-FDB message will not be lost during transmission, the A-Ring protocol also provides a backup mechanism to recover the temporarily blocked port and trigger state switching, i.e. if the Transfer cannot receive the COMPLETE-FLUSH-FDB message within the specified time, it will move to the Link-Up state automatically and open the temporarily blocked port.

### 5.5.1.2 Port role

### Main port and standby port

Master and Transfer have access to the Ethernet ring through a main port and standby port and the port role is decided by the user's configuration.

The main port and standby port of Master have different functions. Master sends the loop state detection message from its main port. If this message can be received by the standby port, it means that the A-Ring ring network of this node is complete. Therefore it is necessary to block the stand by port to prevent the data loop; on contrary, if the detection message cannot be received within the specified time, it means that the ring network is out of order. It is necessary to open the standby port to ensure normal communication of all nodes on the ring. The main port and standby port of the Transfer have the same function. The port role is also decided by the user's configuration.

# 5.5.1.3 Topology type Single ring

Each A-Ring ring physically corresponds to an Ethernet topology connected in A-Ring form, in which there is a main switch only. This main switch is an initiator of the Polling mechanism (automatic detection mechanism of the ring network state) and decider of operation execution after the network topology is changed. The typical topology diagram is shown below:



AVCOMM technologies Inc.

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



### **Tangent ring**

Tangent ring means that two or more A-Rings share a common switch, without public ports. All A-Rings in the tangent ring follow the single ring mechanism, which will not affect each other. Its configuration is basically consistent with that of the single ring, but several A-Rings shall be configured for the public switch. The typical topology diagram is shown below:



Tangent Ring with Tangency at Master

# 5.5.2 Port configuration

## 1. Panel description

Set the basic parameters of the ring. The interface configuration is shown in Figure below:

| Interface Manage 🗸 🖓   | ment Position : | Business Manage / | RING Config  |              |           |          |        |  |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|----------|--------|--|
| Business Manage 🥆      | RingType        | static 🗧          | Apply        |              |           |          |        |  |
| o VLAN Config          | C Ad            | 4                 |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| o MAC Config           | Ring-Id         | EnableStatus      | Port Member1 | Port Member2 | Node role | RingType | handle |  |
| O Spanning-tree Config |                 |                   |              |              |           | 3 /      |        |  |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| O UTRING Config        |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| o L2 mcast-config      |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| o MLD-snooping Config  |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| o QOS Config           |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| o LLDP Config          |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
|                        |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |
| admin   Logout         |                 |                   |              |              |           |          |        |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Add RING Config |              | ×  |
|-----------------|--------------|----|
| Ring-Id         | 1 🕈          |    |
| Node role       | Transfer 🗢   |    |
| Port Member1    | ge1/1 🗢 Role | ÷  |
| Port Member2    | ge1/1 🗢 Role | \$ |
|                 | Add Return   |    |
|                 |              |    |

### 2. Explanations of keywords

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ring Type          | Dynamic and static ring networks. Dynamic loop network indicates     |
|                    | that the master switch is uncertain and changes with the change of   |
|                    | topology. The main characteristic is that no convergence time is     |
|                    | needed when the link is restored. The main characteristic of static  |
|                    | ring network is that no matter how the topology changes, the main    |
|                    | switch is fixed, but the convergence time is needed for link         |
|                    | recovery.                                                            |
| ring ID            | The number of the ring network can be distinguished according to     |
|                    | the ring ID, which ranges from 1 to 16                               |
| The frist port     | The first port member of the ring network. Each member of the ring   |
| member             | may contain at most two ports. Each switch may have more than one    |
|                    | ring.                                                                |
| The second port    | The second port member of the ring network                           |
| member             |                                                                      |
|                    | System types include Transfer (transmission node) and Master         |
| system type        | (Master node).                                                       |
| The node role      | The type of a port member changes according to the system type.      |
|                    | When the system is Master, the type of the member is Master and      |
|                    | Subsidiary; When the system is Transfer, its member is of type None; |

### 3. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Configuration management > UTRing configmenu in the                                                        |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | navigation tree to enter the "UT Ring port configuration" interface.                                                  |
| Step 2 | Fill in the corresponding configuration item and click "Submit".                                                      |
| Step 3 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System maintenance" and "Save settings" for save the settings. |

# 5.6L2-mcast config

The IGMP Snooping is Multicast constraint mechanism that deployed on the Layer 2 switch,

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



it is used to manage & control the multicast group.

The layer 2 device which running IGMP detection will analyze the received IGMP messages, and establish the mapping relationship for the port & MAC multicast address; at the same time, it will forward the multicast data according to this mapping relationship.

As shown the following figure, when the IGMP detection is not running by layer 2 device, the multicast data is broadcasted on layer 2; when the IGMP detection is running by the layer 2 device, multicast data will not be broadcasted in layer 2, but broadcasted to specified one; unknown multicast data still will be broadcasted in layer 2.



# 5.6.1 IGMP-snooping config

The IGMP Snooping is deployed on IPv4 network, to be more specific, on the Layer 2 switch between a multicast router and a user host, acting as a listener for IGMP/MLD messages transmitted between the router and the host and creating the forwarding table of multicast packet on Layer 2 switch to manage and control the forwarding of multicast packets on Layer 2 network.

By default, IGMP snooping on the switch is disabled. Therefore, you need to enable the global IGMP Snooping on the switch,

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >L2-mcast-config >IGMP-snooping config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Interface Manage 🗸 🗸                     | Current Position : Business | s Manage / IGMP-s | nooping           |                             |                |        |        |         |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|--------|--------|---------|
| Business Manage                          | IGMP-snooping Confi         | g Group List      | Vlan –config      | Static IP multicast         | Static Mac mul | ticast |        |         |
| o VLAN Config                            | C Apply                     |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
| o MAC Config                             | Enable                      |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
|                                          | Send query                  |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
| <ul> <li>Spanning-tree Config</li> </ul> | IGMPControl                 |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
| o ERPS-Ring Config                       | Host age-time               | 260               | scope:200-1000, D | Default:0 Seconds; 0: Don't | aĝe            |        |        |         |
| o UTRING Config                          | Router port                 |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
| o L2 mcast-config                        |                             |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
| o MLD-snooping Config                    | □ge1/1                      | _ge1/2            | □ge1/3            | □ge1/4                      | □ge1/5         | □ge1/6 | _ge1/7 | ge1/8   |
| O Mico-shooping comig                    | ge1/9                       |                   | □ge1/11           | ge1/12                      | ge1/13         | ge1/14 |        | _ge1/16 |
| o QOS Config                             | ge1/25                      | _ge1/26           | ge1/27            | ge1/28                      | Select All     |        |        |         |
| o LLDP Config                            |                             |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |
|                                          |                             |                   |                   |                             |                |        |        |         |

| 1                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration item | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Enable             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| IGMP-snooping      | Single check, enable or disable                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Host-age time      | When one port add in certain multicast group, the switch launch a timer for this port, the overtime is the host-age time. When overtime, the switch will delete the port in the multicast group far warding table. The scope is 200-1000s, default is 260s |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add".

# **5.6.2** Static multicast

Based on the old multicast mode, when the users in the different VLAN ask for the same multicast, the data on the multicast router will copy and forward the VLAN for every recipient. This mode wastes lots of bandwidth. While enable IGMP Snooping function, the switch ports are added in the multicast VLAN through multicast group VLAN configuration mode. This makes the users in different VLAN share the same multicast VLAN to receive the multicast data; the multicast flow only be transmitted in the same multicast VLAN, this save the bandwidth. And the multicast VLAN is isolated with users VLAN, this ensure the safety and bandwidth stable.

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >IGMP-snooping config >Static IP multicast" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : Business Ma | inage / IGMP-sni | ooping       |                     |                      |        |
|--------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------|
| IGMP-snooping Config           | Group List       | Vlan –config | Static IP multicast | Static Mac multicast |        |
| C AddStatic IP m               | nulticast        |              |                     |                      |        |
| SerialNum Vlan ID              | Multicast sour   | rce Multica  | ast addr Port       | list                 | handle |
|                                |                  |              |                     |                      |        |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| AddStatic IP mult            | icast        |                 |                |        |                |                |                |                     | × |
|------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|--------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------|---|
| Vian ID                      | scope:1-409  | 94              |                |        |                |                |                |                     |   |
| Multicast source             | eg:192.168.1 | 1.1if empty(0.0 | 0.0),any sourc | 8      |                |                |                |                     |   |
| M <mark>ulticast addr</mark> | eg:225.1.2.3 |                 |                |        |                |                |                |                     |   |
|                              | □ge1/1       | _ge1/2          | _ge1/3         | ge1/4  | ge1/5          | ge1/6          | ge1/7          | <mark>g</mark> e1/8 |   |
| Port list                    | ge1/9        | _ge1/10         | _ge1/11        | ge1/12 | <b></b> ge1/13 | <b></b> ge1/14 | <b></b> ge1/15 | <b></b> ge1/16      |   |
|                              |              | _ge1/26         | ge1/27         | ge1/28 | Select All     |                |                |                     |   |
|                              | Add          | Return          |                |        |                |                |                |                     |   |

| Configuration Meaning |                                                           |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| item                  |                                                           |  |  |  |  |  |
| Vlan Id               | Fixed, it is fixed by the user options.                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                       | Remarks: ensure the VLAN is created. Input a created VLAN |  |  |  |  |  |
| Source multicast      | Input source multicast address                            |  |  |  |  |  |
| Multicast address     | Input multicast address                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port list             | Add multicast member                                      |  |  |  |  |  |

- 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.
- 3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| GMP-sn | ooping Config  | Group List \     | /lan –config | Static IP multicast | Static Mac multicast |        |
|--------|----------------|------------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------|
| C      | AddStatic IP n | nulticast        |              |                     |                      |        |
| 0      | Num Vlan ID    | Multicast source | Multice      | ast addr Port       | list                 | handle |
| Serial |                |                  |              |                     |                      |        |

# 5.6.3 GROUP config

1. Click the "Business manage >L2-mcast-config>IGMP-snooping list" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| •                | Clear               |                |      |           |  |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------|------|-----------|--|
|                  |                     |                |      |           |  |
| SerialNumVlan IC | Multicast<br>source | Multicast addr | Port | Expire(s) |  |

2. Choose relative port, click "Clear".

# 5.6.4 VLAN config

Operation steps

1. Click the "L2 mcast-config >L2-mcast-config >vlan config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Apply       |        |        |            |               |               |   |        |
|-------------|--------|--------|------------|---------------|---------------|---|--------|
| Vian ID Mut | ticast | Enable | Fast-leave | Max-response- | Query-Version | 0 | handle |

| Configuration  | Meaning                                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| item           |                                                        |
| Vlan Id        | Fixed                                                  |
|                | Remarks: Ensure VLAN is created , input a created VLAN |
| Fast-leave     | Enable/disable, enable is "1", disable is "0"          |
| Query interval | Scope: 2-1800s                                         |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Vlan ID | Multicast     | Enable | Fast-leave | Max-response-<br>time | Query-Version | Query interval | handle   |
|---------|---------------|--------|------------|-----------------------|---------------|----------------|----------|
| 1       | Flood-unknown | Yes    | No         | 10                    | 3             | 125            | <u>ê</u> |
| 10      | Flood-unknown | Yes    | Yes        | 10                    | 3             | 60             | <u>m</u> |

# 5.7 MLD-Snooping

MLD Snooping (Multicast Listener Discovery Snooping), It is an IPv6 multicast constraint mechanism that runs on Layer 2 devices and is used to manage and control IPv6 multicast groups.

# 5.7.1 MLD Snooping Principle

A Layer 2 device running MLD Snooping establishes a mapping for port and MAC multicast addresses by analyzing incoming MLD messages and forwards IPv6 multicast data based on such a mapping.

As shown in the figure below, when the Layer 2 device is not running MLD Snooping, IPv6 multicast data messages are broadcast at Layer 2; when the Layer 2 device is running MLD Snooping, multicast data messages of known IPv6 multicast groups are not broadcast at Layer 2, but are multicast to the specified receiver at Layer 2.





Comparison of Layer 2 devices before and after running MLD Snooping

MLD Snooping forwards information via Layer 2 multicast to only those receivers who need it, providing the following benefits.

- Reduce broadcast messages in Layer 2 networks, saving network bandwidth.
- Enhance security of IPv6 multicast packet;
- Brings convenience to independent billing of each host.

# 5.7.2 MLD Snooping Basic Concept

#### 1. MLD Snooping Related port

As shown in the figure below, Router A connects to the multicast source and runs MLD Snooping on Switch A and Switch B. Host A and Host C are the recipient hosts (i.e. IPv6 multicast group members).





In conjunction with the above diagram, introduce the port concepts associated with MLD Snooping.

Router Port: The port on the switch that faces the side of the Layer 3 multicast device (DR or MLD querier, such as the Gigabit Ethernet 1/0/1 port on each of Switch A and Switch B. The switch records all router ports on this device in the Routing Port list. The switch records all router ports on the routing port list.

Member Port: Also known as IPv6 multicast group member port, it is the port on the switch facing the IPv6 multicast group member side, For example, GigabitEthernet1/0/2 and GigabitEthernet1/0/3 ports of Switch A, and GigabitEthernet1/0/2 port of Switch B.The switch records all member ports on this device in the MLD Snooping forwarding table.

# 5.7.3 MLD Snooping Working mechanism

A switch running MLD Snooping handles the different MLD actions in the following manner:

### 1. General query

The MLD querier periodically sends MLD universal group query messages to all hosts and routers (FF02::1) in the local network segment to query which IPv6 multicast groups are members of the segment.

- When an MLD universal group query message is received, the switch forwards it out through all ports in the VLAN except the receiving port and does the following actions for the receiving port of the message:
- If the dynamic router port is already included in the routing port list, reset its aging timer.
- If the dynamic router port is not included in the routing port list, add it to the routing port list and start its aging timer.

#### 2. Report Member Relations

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



The host sends an MLD member relationship report message to the MLD querier in the following cases:

- When a member host of an IPv6 multicast group receives an MLD query message, it replies with an MLD member relationship report message.
- If a host wants to join an IPv6 multicast group, it proactively sends an MLD membership report message to the MLD querier to declare its membership in the IPv6 multicast group.

When an MLD membership report message is received, the switch forwards it out through all router ports in the VLAN, resolves the IPv6 multicast group address that the host wants to join from the message, and does the following for the receiving port of the message:

- If no forwarding table entry exists for this IPv6 multicast group, create a forwarding table entry, add the port as a dynamic member port to the outgoing port list, and start its aging timer.
- If the forwarding table entry corresponding to this IPv6 multicast group already exists, but the port is not included in its outgoing port list, add the port to the outgoing port list as a dynamic member port and start its aging timer.
- If there is already a forwarding table entry for this IPv6 multicast group and its outgoing port list already contains this dynamic member port, then reset its aging timer.

#### 3. Leave multicast group

When a host leaves an IPv6 multicast group, it notifies the multicast router that it has left an IPv6 multicast group by sending an MLD leave group message. When the switch receives an MLD leave group message from a dynamic member port, it first determines whether the forwarding table entry corresponding to the IPv6 multicast group to be left exists and whether the receiving port is included in the list of outgoing ports of the forwarding table entry corresponding to the IPv6 multicast group:

- If no forwarding table entry exists for the IPv6 multicast group, or if the outgoing port list for the corresponding forwarding table entry for the IPv6 multicast group does not contain the port, the switch does not forward the message to any port, but discards it directly.
- If there is a forwarding table for the IPv6 multicast group and the outgoing port list of the corresponding forwarding table for the IPv6 multicast group contains this port, the switch forwards the message through all router ports in the VLAN. At the same time, since it is not known whether there are other members of the IPv6 multicast group under the receiving port, the switch does not immediately remove the port from the outgoing port list of the corresponding forwarding table for the IPv6 multicast group, but resets its aging timer.

When the MLD querier receives an MLD leave group message, it resolves the address of the IPv6 multicast group that the host wants to leave and sends an MLD specific group query message to that IPv6 multicast group through the receive port. After receiving the MLD group-specific query message, the switch forwards it out through all router ports in the VLAN and all member ports of the IPv6 multicast group. For the receiving port of an MLD leave group message (assumed to be a dynamic member port), the switch, during its aging time:

• If an MLD membership relationship report message is received from that port from a host in response to a query for that particular group, it indicates that there are still members of that IPv6 multicast group under that port and resets its aging timer.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



• If no MLD membership relationship report message is received from this port from a host in response to this group-specific query, it means that there are no more members of this IPv6 multicast group under this port, and then it is removed from the outgoing port list of the forwarding table entry corresponding to this IPv6 multicast group after its aging time has expired.

# **5.7.4** MLD-Snooping Configuration

### Operation step

1.Click "Service Management" in the navigation bar> MLD-Snooping Configuration" Menu, Enter the "MLD-Snooping Configuration" interface, as shown in the following figure.

| Interface Manage 🗸 🗸                     | Current Position : Business M | lanage / MLD-s | nooping Config  |                     |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Business Manage                          | MLD-snooping Config           | GroupList      | Vlan-config     | Static IP multicast |
| o VLAN Config                            | C Apply                       |                |                 |                     |
| o MAC Config                             | Enable                        |                |                 |                     |
|                                          | Send query                    |                |                 |                     |
| <ul> <li>Spanning-tree Config</li> </ul> | Host age-time                 | 260            | scope:200-1000, | , Default:260       |
| o ERPS-Ring Config                       |                               |                |                 |                     |
| o UTRING Config                          |                               |                |                 |                     |
| O L2 mcast-config                        |                               |                |                 |                     |
| o MLD-snooping Config                    |                               |                |                 |                     |
| o QOS Config                             |                               |                |                 |                     |
| o LLDP Config                            |                               |                |                 |                     |

| Configuration item | Description                                                            |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable             | If MLD-Snooping is globally disabled, it is not possible to            |
| MLD-Snooping       | configure MLD-Snooping under VLAN.                                     |
| Configuration      | Single option, divided into two states(enable and disable), the        |
|                    | default is disable.                                                    |
| Host aging time    | When a port joins a multicast group, the switch starts a timer for the |
|                    | port with a timeout that is the host port aging time. After the        |
|                    | timeout, the switch removes the port from the forwarding table of      |
|                    | the multicast group. The value ranges from 200 ~ 1000 seconds,         |
|                    | and the default value is 260 seconds.                                  |

The meaning of the interface information is shown in the following table

2. Fill in the appropriate configuration items.

3. Click "Setting" to complete the configuration.

# 5.7.5 Static Multicast

Based on the previous multicast on-demand approach, when users in different VLANs demand the same multicast group, the data is replicated and forwarded on the multicast router for each VLAN including the recipient. Such a multicast on-demand approach wastes a lot of bandwidth. After the MLD-Snooping function is activated, the switch ports are added to the multicast VLAN by configuring the multicast VLAN, so that users in different VLANs share one multicast VLAN to receive multicast data, and multicast streams are transmitted only in one multicast VLAN, thus saving bandwidth. And because multicast VLANs are completely

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



isolated from users, both security and bandwidth are guaranteed.

Operation step

1.Click "Service Management" in the navigation > MLD-Snooping > Static IP Multicast" menu, enter the "Static IP Multicast" interface as shown in the following figure.

| Current Position : Business M | anage / MLD-s | nooping Config |                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------------|
| MLD-snooping Config           | GroupList     | Vlan-config    | Static IP multicast |
| C Add                         |               |                |                     |
| SerialNumVlan ID              | Multicast     | source         | Multicast addr      |

The meaning of the interface information is shown in the table below.

| Configuration item | Description                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Vlan Id            | Fixed according to the data selected by user       |
|                    | Description: Enter a VLAN that has been created    |
| Multicast Source   | Enter the multicast source address                 |
| Multicast address  | Enter the multicast address                        |
| Port list          | Add multicast member, you can select more than one |

The meaning of the interface information is shown in the table below.

2.Click "Add" to fill in the appropriate configuration items.

3. Click "Setting" to complete the configuration, as shown below.

| SerialNumVlan ID    | Multicast so | urce M      | lulticast addr      | Port list | handle |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------|--------|
| C Add               |              |             |                     |           |        |
| MLD-snooping Config | GroupList    | Vlan-config | Static IP multicast |           |        |

# **5.7.6** group list

Operation step

1.Click "Service Management" in the navigation > MLD-Snooping Configuration > Group List" menu, enter the "Group List" interface as shown in the figure below.

| Current Positio | on : Business Ma   | anage / MLD-snoop | ping Config |                     |                   |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| MLD-sno         | oping Config       | GroupList \       | Vlan-config | Static IP multicast | t                 |
|                 | ÷ Cie              |                   |             |                     |                   |
|                 | ¢ Cle              | ear               |             |                     |                   |
| Serial          | <b>lumVlan I</b> D | Multicast sou     | urce Mu     | ulticast addr       | Port list(Expire) |
| 1               | 1                  |                   | 20          | 00::2               | fe1/1(-)          |

2. Select the appropriate interface and click "Clear".

# **5.7.7** VLAN Setting

Operation step

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



#### figure below.

| ent roation : Dusine | ss Manage / MLD-s | nooping Config |                 |                |              |     |     |
|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|-----|-----|
| MLD-snooping Conf    | ig GroupList      | Vlan-config    | Static IP multi | cast           |              |     |     |
| C Apply              |                   |                |                 |                |              |     |     |
|                      |                   |                |                 |                |              |     |     |
| Vian ID Ena          | able Fast-        | leave Max-re   | esponse-time    | Query interval | Query source | han | dle |

The meaning of the interface information is shown in the table below.

| Configuration | Description                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                                                   |
| Vlan Id       | Fixed according to the data selected by user                      |
|               | Description: Enter a VLAN that has been created                   |
| Fast leave    | Enable/disable fast leave multicast. Enable to show 1, Disable to |
| multicast     | show 0                                                            |
| Query message | Range: 2-1800 seconds                                             |
| interval      |                                                                   |

2. Click "Add" to fill in the appropriate configuration items.

3. Click "Setting" to complete the configuration, as shown below.

|                                           |        | age / MLD-sr | nooping Contig |                 |                |              |        |  |
|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|--------|--|
| MLD-snooping                              | Config | GroupList    | Vlan-config    | Static IP multi | icast          |              |        |  |
| САрр                                      | N/     |              |                |                 |                |              |        |  |
| - AND | Y      |              |                |                 |                |              |        |  |
| Vian ID                                   | Enable | Fast-I       | eave Max-r     | esponse-time    | Query interval | Query source | handle |  |

# 5.8QOS config

In network services, the Quality of Service (QoS) includes the transmission bandwidth, transmission delay and packet loss rate. In the network, the QoS can be improved by ensuring the transmission bandwidth, reducing the transmission delay, minimizing the data packet loss rate and delay jitter.

QoS can be used to regulate network traffic, avoid and manage network congestion, and reduce packet loss rate, which also supports provision of dedicated bandwidth to users, different service quality for different services, improve the network service capabilities.

Different packets are assigned different QoS precedence. For example, VLAN packets are assigned the 802.1p or Class of Service (CoS) field and IP packets are assigned the DSCP. When packets are transmitted through different networks, in order to maintain the precedence of the packets, you need to configure the mappings between these precedence fields at the gateways connecting different networks.

802.1p precedence in VLAN header

The VLAN frames are usually transmitted between Layer 2 devices. According to the definition of IEEE 802.1Q, the PRI (802.1p precedence) field or the CoS (Class of Service) field in the VLAN header identifies theQoS requirement.

802.1p precedence in VLAN frames

AVCOMM technologies Inc.




The 802.1Q header contains a 3-bit long PRI field, which defines eight types of business precedence CoS, i.e. 7,6, ..., 1 and 0 in descending order of precedence.

#### IP Precedence/DSCP field

According to the definition of RFC791, the ToS (Type of Service) field of an IP packet header is composed of 8 bits, of which the 3-bit Precedence field identifies the precedence of the IP packet. The location of the Precedence in the packet is shown in the figure below.

#### IP Precedence/DSCP field



The bits from 0 to 2are the Precedence field, which represents the eight precedence levels of packet transmission, i.e. 7,6, ..., 1, and 0 in descending order of precedence. 7 or 6 represents the highest precedence, which is often reserved for routing or updating network control traffic. The user-level applications can only take the precedence from 0 to 5.

In addition to the Precedence field, the ToS field also includes three bits, i.e. D, T and R, of which Indicates the delay requirement (0 stands for normal delay and 1 stands for low delay). T represents throughput (0 stands for normal throughput and 1 stands for high throughput). R indicates reliability (0 stands for normal reliability and 1 stands for high reliability). The 6th and 7th bits in the ToS field are reserved.

As specified in DiffServ system, each message will be classified into different categories in the network. The classified information is contained in the IP packet header. The DiffServ system uses the first 6 bits of Type of Service (TOS) in the IP packet header to carry the packet classification information. This definition is valid only for the lower 6bits and is a number less than 63. This definition supports both IPv4 (ToS fields) and IPv6 (Traffic Class fields). There are 64 DSCP precedence values (0-63).



# 5.8.1 QOS Global config

In the case of network congestion, it is necessary to solve the problem of multiple messages competing for resources at the same time. Congestion management usually adopts queue scheduling technology to avoid intermittent congestion in network. Queue scheduling technologies include: SP (Strict Priority), WRR (Weighted Round Robin), DRR scheduling (DRR (Deficit Round Robin) scheduling is also an extension of RR).

#### Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >QOS config >Global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| o VLAN Config          | Current Position : Busin | iess Manage 🛛 / | QOS Config      | l.             |               |               |        |          |     |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|--------|----------|-----|
| o MAC Config           | Global Config            | Port Config     |                 |                |               |               |        |          |     |
| O Spanning-tree Config | Policy                   | OSP ○V          |                 |                |               |               |        |          |     |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     | Weight                   | W0:             | W1:             | W2:            | W3:           | W4:           | W5:    | W6:      | W7: |
| o UTRING Config        |                          | Set up class-c  | of-service po   | licy and corre | aponding weig | hts and delay |        |          |     |
| o L2 mcast-config      | COSCos map               |                 |                 |                |               |               |        |          |     |
| o MLD-snooping Config  | queue                    | COS 0 ¢         | -> Queu         | e 0 ¢          | Apply         |               |        |          |     |
| o QOS Config           |                          | Map packet to   | special queu    | ue according t | o cos.        |               |        |          |     |
| o LLDP Config          | Current map              | 0->0            | 1->1            | 2->2           | 3->3          | 4->4          | 5->5 6 | 6->6 7-> | 7   |
| o UDLD Config          | DSCPCos map<br>queue     | DSCP 0 :        | ¢ -> Nev        | v DSCP 0       |               | S 0 \$        | Apply  |          |     |
| O Link-flap-config     | or the name of the       | Define a mapp   | oing for diffse | rv code point: | 1.            |               |        |          |     |
| o DHCP Server Config   | Current map              |                 |                 |                |               |               |        |          |     |

Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SP                 | SP queue scheduling algorithm is designed for key business<br>applications. A key feature of critical business is the requirement that<br>services be given priority in the event of congestion to reduce latency<br>in response. Taking 8 output queues of ports as an example, the<br>priority queue divides 8 output queues of ports into 8 classes, which<br>are successively 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 and 0 queues.<br>Their priorities are lowered in turn. |
| WRR                | WRR queue scheduling algorithm takes turns among the queues to<br>ensure that each queue gets a certain service time. For example, if<br>there are 8 output queues on the port, WRR can configure a weighting<br>value for each queue (w7, w6, w5, w4, w3, w2, w1, w0 are the<br>corresponding weighted values in order).                                                                                                                                    |
| DRR                | DRR (Defict Round Robin) scheduling is also an extension of RR.<br>Compared with WRR, WRR only cares about messages, and the actual<br>bandwidth obtained by big size messages is greater than that obtained<br>by small size messages under the same scheduling opportunity. The<br>packet length factor is taken into account in the scheduling process, so<br>as to achieve the scheduling rate equity.                                                   |
| DSCP               | Range 0-63                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| New DSCP | Range 0-63                                     |
|----------|------------------------------------------------|
| Cos      | Range 0-7                                      |
| Queue    | Range 0-7                                      |
| Weight   | Weighted value, range:0-100, used in WRR & DRR |

# 5.8.2 QOS port config

#### Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >QOS config >Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Apply | Port Config |  |
|-------|-------------|--|
| Port  | Default COS |  |
| *     | * \$        |  |
| ge1/1 | 0 🗢         |  |
| ge1/2 | 0 🜩         |  |
| ge1/3 | 0 🗢         |  |
| ge1/4 | 0 🗢         |  |
| ge1/5 | 0 🗢         |  |
| ge1/6 | 0 🗢         |  |
| ge1/7 | 0 🖨         |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                      |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Port               | With optional multiple ports |
| Default cos        | Scope:0-7                    |

# **5.9**LLDP config**5.9.1** Working Mode of LLDP

LLDP has the following four working modes:

- TxRx: Send and receive LLDP packet.
- Tx: Send but not receive LLDP packet.
- Rx: Receive but not sent LLDP packet.
- Disable: Neither send nor receive LLDP packet.

When LLDP working mode of the port changes, the port will initialize the protocol state machine. In order to avoid frequent changes in the working mode of a port and cause the port to constantly perform an initialization operation, the port initialization delay time can be configured. When the working mode of the port changes, the initialization operation is delayed for a period of time.



### **5.9.2** Sending Mechanism of LLDP Message

When a port works in TxRx or Tx mode, the device periodically sends LLDP packet to its neighbors. If the local configuration of a device changes, a LLDP packet is sent immediately to notify the neighboring devices of the local information changes as soon as possible. However, in order to prevent a large number of LLDP packets from being sent due to frequent local changes, every LLDP packet sent must be delayed for a period of time before sending the next packet.

When the working mode of the device is changed from Disable/Rx to TxRx/Tx or a new neighbor device is found (that is, a new LLDP packet will be received and information about the sending device of the packet is not saved locally), the device will automatically enable the fast sending mechanism, to reduce the sending cycle of LLDP packet to 1 second, and will continuously send specified number of LLDP packet before resume normal sending cycle.

### **5.9.3** Receiving Mechanism of LLDP Message

When a port works in TxRx or Rx mode, the device will check the validity of received LLDP packets and carried TLVs. After passing the check, the device will save the neighbor information to the local area and set the aging time of neighbor information on the local device based on the Time To Live (TTL) value in TLV. If the value is zero, the neighbor information is aged immediately.

# 5.9.4 LLDP global config

Operation steps :

1. Click the "Business manage >LLDP config >Global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| o VLAN Config          | Current Position : Business Ma | anage / LLDP Config  |                                                                         |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| o MAC Config           | Global Config Port C           | config LLDP Neighbor | 3                                                                       |
| o Spanning-tree Config |                                |                      |                                                                         |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     | C Apply                        |                      |                                                                         |
| o UTRING Config        | LLDP                           | 🔿 Enable 🧿 Disable   |                                                                         |
| o L2 mcast-config      | Send cycle                     | 30                   | scope:5-65535, Default:30                                               |
|                        | Hold Time                      | 120                  | scope:5-65535, Default:120                                              |
| o MLD-snooping Config  | Send interval                  | 2                    | scops:2–5, Default:2                                                    |
| o QOS Config           | Reinit delay                   | 2                    | scope:2-5, Default:2                                                    |
| o LLDP Config          | TLV Optional to send           | Management address   | 🗹 Port description 🗹 System property 🗹 System description 🗹 System name |
| o UDLD Config          |                                |                      |                                                                         |
| o Link-flap-config     |                                |                      |                                                                         |
| o DHCP Server Config   |                                |                      |                                                                         |
| admin   Logout         |                                |                      |                                                                         |

Explanations

| Configuration item | Description                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| LLDP               | Single opton, enable or disable LLDP |
| Send cycle         | Default is 30s, scope: 5-65535s      |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Hold time          | The amount of time that device information is held in a neighbor |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                    | device. Default is 120s, scope: 5-65535s                         |
| Send interval      | Default is 2s, scope: 2-5s                                       |
| Reinit delay       | Default is 2s, scope: 2-5s                                       |
| TLV option to send | Management address, port description, system property, system    |
|                    | description, system name                                         |

Ethernet messages that encapsulate LLDP Data Unit are called LLDP messages. TLV is the unit that constitutes LLDPDU, and each TLV represents a message.

- 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.
- 3. Click "add".

## 5.9.5 Port config

Operation steps

 Click the "Business manage >LLDP config >Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| lobal Config | Port Config | LLDP Neigh | bors               |
|--------------|-------------|------------|--------------------|
| C Appl       | Y.          |            |                    |
| Port         | Send        | Receive    | Management address |
| *            | * +         | * \$       | *                  |
| ge1/1        |             |            |                    |
| ge1/2        |             |            |                    |
| ge1/3        |             |            |                    |
| ge1/4        |             |            |                    |
| ge1/5        |             |            |                    |
| ge1/6        |             |            |                    |
| ge1/7        |             |            |                    |

#### Explanations

| Configuration   | Meaning                                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| item            |                                                           |
| Port            | Supports to configure ports                               |
| Send            | Send LLDP message                                         |
| Receive         | Receive LLDP message                                      |
| Managed address | Input this terminal switch IP address, e.g. 192.168.1.254 |

There are 2 working mode of LLDP. TxRx: Transmit and receive LLDP message. Disable: neither transmit nor receive LLDP message.

2. Configure send & receive LLDP pack message, click the "Business manage >LLDP config >Port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, tick send & receive in ge1/1, input the IP address of this switch, e.g 192.168.1.254, click "save", the

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port  | Send | Receive | Management address |  |
|-------|------|---------|--------------------|--|
| *     | * •  | * 7     | *                  |  |
| ge1/1 |      |         | 192.168.1.2        |  |

### **5.9.6** LLDP neighbors

LLDP neighbors display operation steps

Click the "Business manage >LLDP config >LLDP neighbor" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| lobal Config  | Port Config    | LLDP Neighbors                                             |  |  |  |
|---------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Capability Co | des            |                                                            |  |  |  |
| Capability CO |                |                                                            |  |  |  |
| (R)Router,(B) | Bridge,(C)DOCS | SIS Cable Device,(T)Telepho                                |  |  |  |
| (R)Router,(B) | Bridge,(C)DOCS | SIS Cable Device,(T)Telepho<br>epeater,(S)Station,(O)Other |  |  |  |
| (R)Router,(B) | Bridge,(C)DOCS |                                                            |  |  |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                          |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device-ID          | Equipment Model Name                                             |
| Chassis-ID         | Equipment mac address                                            |
| Mgm-IP             | Device Management IP                                             |
| Local-Intf         | Local port number                                                |
| Hldtme             | The amount of time that device information is held in a neighbor |
|                    | device                                                           |
| Port-ID            | Neighbor port number                                             |

# 5.10 UDLD config

UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection ):Layer 2 protocol for monitoring the physical management of Ethernet links using fiber optic or twisted-pair connections. When a one-way link (which can only be transmitted in one direction) occurs, the UDLD can detect the condition, close the corresponding interface and send a warning message<sub>o</sub>

UDLD supports two working modes; Normal (default) and Aggressive (default) modes\_  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{o}}$ 

Click the "Business Management >UDLD Management" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "UDLD Management" interface, as shown in the figure below<sub>o</sub>



| LAN Config Ci       | ment Position : |                  |               |                                        |  |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------|--|
| AAC Config          | Port Config     | UDLD Nei         | ghbors        |                                        |  |
| panning-tree Config | C App           |                  |               |                                        |  |
| RPS-Ring Config     | C AND           | <i>in y</i>      |               |                                        |  |
| TRING Config        | when the port I | UniDirectional,t | ne port is co | infigure with an error down and logged |  |
|                     | Port            | Mode             |               | Probe Time (second)                    |  |
| L2 moast-config     | *               |                  | \$            | *                                      |  |
| MLD-snooping Config | ge1/1           | disable          | ٠             | 7                                      |  |
| QOS Config          | ge1/2           | disable          | ٠             | 7                                      |  |
| LLDP Config         | ge1/3           | disable          | \$            | 7                                      |  |
| UDLD Config         | ge1/4           | disable          | ٠             | 7                                      |  |
| Link-flap-config    | ge1/5           | disable          | •             | 7                                      |  |
| Link-nap-conng      | ge1/6           | disable          | \$            | 7                                      |  |
| DHCP Server Config  |                 |                  |               |                                        |  |

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                 |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| normal             | UDLD can detect unidirectional links and mark ports as undetermined     |
|                    | to produce system logs                                                  |
| aggressive         | UDLD can detect by unidirectional links.An attempt to rebuild the       |
|                    | link is made to send a UDLD message probe packet every 7 seconds.       |
|                    | If there are no UDLD echo replies, the port is placed in the ErrDisable |
|                    | state                                                                   |
| Probe              | Detection time                                                          |

## 5.11 Link-flap config

Link oscillation is to close the interface whose physical state frequently changes Up/Down and make it in the state of Down, so that the network topology will stop changing frequently back and forth. When the number of times the link has wobbled over the polling interval exceeds the set threshold, alarm logs are generated and the port is set to Err-Disable state<sub>o</sub>

Click the "Business Management > Link-Flap" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "Link-Flap Management" interface, as shown in the figure below.

| o MAC Config           | Global Config Po        | rt Config        |                                                                     |
|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| o Spanning-tree Config | C Apply                 |                  |                                                                     |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     | when the number of link | flap exceeds the | e set threshold,the port is configure with an error down and logged |
| o UTRING Config        | Polling interval        | 60               | scope:10-100(s), Default:80(s) Seconds                              |
| o L2 mcast-config      | Flap threshold          | з                | scope:3-100, Default:3                                              |
| o MLDsnooping Config   | Recovery time           | 0                | scope:0, 30-86400(s), Default:0(s) Seconds; 0: Disable              |
| o QOS Config           |                         |                  |                                                                     |
| o LLDP Config          |                         |                  |                                                                     |
| o UDLD Config          |                         |                  |                                                                     |
| O ODED Coning          |                         |                  |                                                                     |
| Link-flap-config       |                         |                  |                                                                     |

#### Explanations

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Configuration item    | Meaning                                                             |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| polling interval      | The system needs to count the number of link oscillations in unit   |
|                       | time, which is recorded as the link oscillation time interval       |
| Instability threshold | The Up/Down switch of interface state is recorded as one link       |
|                       | oscillation                                                         |
| recovery time         | Interface down after the set recovery time can be UP, 0 is disabled |

# 5.12 DHCP Server config

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) is usually applied in large local area network environments. Its main role is to centrally manage and assign IP addresses, so that hosts in the network environment can dynamically obtain IP addresses, Gateway addresses, DNS server addresses and other information, and improve the utilization rate of addresses.



# **5.12.1** DHCP IP address allocation**5.12.1.1** IP address allocation strategies

According to different demands of clients, DHCP provides three IP address allocation strategies:

Manually assigned addresses: static bound fixed IP addresses set by the administrator for a few specific clients (such as the WWW server).Send the configured fixed IP address to the client via DHCP.

Automatic allocation of addresses: DHCP assigns clients an IP address with an unlimited lease period.

Dynamic allocation address: DHCP assigns the IP address with a certain validity period to the clients. After reaching the validity period, the client needs to re-apply for the address. Most clients get this dynamically assigned address.



### 5.12.1.2 IP address dynamic acquisition



IP address Dynamic acquisition process

As shown in the figure above, the DHCP client dynamically obtains the IP address from the DHCP server, mainly through four stages:

(1) Discovery stage is where the DHCP client looks for the DHCP server. The client sends the DHCP-DISCOVER message by broadcasting.

(2) Provide stage, that is, the stage where DHCP server provides IP address. After receiving the DHCP-DISCOVER message from the client, the DHCP server selects an IP address according to the priority assigned by the IP address and sends it to the client with other parameters through the DHCP-OFFER message. The way of sending the DHCP-OFFER message is determined by the flag field in the DHCP-DISCOVER message.

(3) Selection stage, that is, the stage where the DHCP client selects the IP address. If multiple DHCP-OFFER messages are sent to this client by DHCP server, the client only accepts the first received DHCP-OFFER message, and then sends the DHCP-REQUEST message through broadcasting, which contains the IP address assigned by the DHCP server in the DHCP-OFFER message.

(4) confirmation stage, that is, the stage where DHCP server confirms the IP address. After the DHCP-REQUEST message sent by the DHCP client is received by the DHCP server, only the server selected by the DHCP client will perform the following operations: if the address is confirmed to be assigned to the client, the DHCP-ACK message will be returned; Otherwise, return the DHCP-NAK message this indicates that the address cannot be assigned to the client.

### 5.12.2 DHCP pool config

Enable DHCP-snooping Operation steps

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



1. Click the "Business manage >DHCP server config >DHCP pool config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| o VLAN Config Curren   | t Position : Business | Manage / DHC | P Server Config      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------|--|
| o MAC Config DH        | CP Pool Config        | Leases List  | Static Leases Config | Port Bind Config |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o Spanning-tree Config |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o ERPS-Ring Config     | DHCPService           | Enable       | Apply                |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o UTRING Config        | Add                   |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| O L2 mcast-config      | Pool name             | Status       | Subnet mask          | Lease time       | Default gateway/<br>Name server | Domain server/<br>NetBIOS Server | handle |  |
| o MLD-snooping Config  |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o QOS Config           |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o LLDP Config          |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o UDLD Config          |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o Link-flap-config     |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| o DHCP Server Config   |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |
| idmín Logout           |                       |              |                      |                  |                                 |                                  |        |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration<br>item | Meaning                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pool name             | Length of the DHCP Server pool name is 1~48                                                 |
| Subnet mask           | DHCP client can automatically obtain the IP                                                 |
| Lease time            | DHCP client can automatically obtain the lease time of the address, the scope is 0-999 days |
| Default gateway       | DHCP client can automatically obtain the gateway                                            |
| DNS address           | DHCP client can automatically obtain the DNS address                                        |
| Domain service        | DHCP client can automatically obtain the domain                                             |
| NetBIOS server        | DHCP client can automatically obtain NetBIOS server address                                 |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add".



| Current Pos | ition : Busine: | ss Manage / DHC | P Server Config |                   |          |            |         |       |   |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------|------------|---------|-------|---|
| DHCP        | Pool Config     | Leases List     | Static Leases   | Config Port Bind  | l Config |            |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 | _               | AddDHCP Pool Conf | fig      |            |         |       | × |
| DHO         | PService        | 🗹 Enable        | Apply           |                   |          |            |         |       |   |
| C           | Add             |                 |                 | Pool name         | length:1 | _/19       |         |       |   |
| Poo         | Iname           | Status          | Subnet m        | Subnet mask       | -        | -40        |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 | Cabillatin      |                   | eg:192.1 | 168.0.1/24 |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 | Lease time        |          | 14-1-1     | Day 0 🜩 | Hours |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 | Default gateway   |          | Minutes    |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 | Default gateway   | eg:192.1 | 168.0.1    | - Are   |       |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 | Name server       |          |            |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 | Domain server     |          |            |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 | NetBIOS Server    |          |            |         |       |   |
|             |                 |                 |                 |                   | Add      | Return     |         |       |   |

# 5.12.3 Port bind

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >DHCP-snooping config >Port bind config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| ent Position : Busine | ss Manage / DHC | P Server Config      |                  |
|-----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| HCP Pool Config       | Leases List     | Static Leases Config | Port Bind Config |
| C Add                 |                 |                      |                  |
| DHCP Pool             | Port            | IP address           |                  |
|                       |                 |                      |                  |
| ddPort Bind Confi     | 9               |                      | ×                |
|                       |                 |                      |                  |
| 121122                |                 |                      |                  |
| DHCP Poo              | l aaaa 🗘        |                      |                  |
| Por                   | t ge1/1 🗢       |                      |                  |
| IP address            |                 |                      |                  |
| IP BOOLES:            | eg:192.168.0.1  |                      |                  |
|                       | 69.132.100.0.1  |                      |                  |
|                       | Add Re          | eturn                |                  |
|                       |                 |                      |                  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration | Meaning                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| item          |                                   |
| DHCP Pool     | Fixed value, created address pool |
| IP address    | Static IP address of the user     |
| Port          | Matching switch port              |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



- 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.
- 3. Click "add".

| DHCP Pool | Port  | IP address   |        |  |
|-----------|-------|--------------|--------|--|
| aa        | ge1/1 | 192.168.0.11 | Delete |  |

# **5.12.4** Static client config

In the DHCP network, users who obtain IP addresses statically (non-DHCP users) may have various attacks on the network, such as imitating DHCP Server and constructing false DHCP Request messages. This will bring some security risks for legitimate DHCP users to use the network normally.

In order to effectively prevent non-DHCP user attacks, the device can be enabled to generate static MAC table entry functions based on the DHCP Snooping binding table. After that, the device will automatically execute commands to generate static MAC table entries for all the DHCP user's corresponding DHCP Snooping bound table items under the interface, and at the same time shut down the interface's ability to learn dynamic MAC table items. At this point, only the source MAC and static MAC table item matching message can pass through the interface, otherwise the message will be discarded. Therefore, for non-DHCP users under this interface, only if the administrator manually configures the static MAC table items of such users, their messages can pass, otherwise the messages will be discarded.

Static client configuration can be used to satisfy specific devices (such as servers) that require a fixed IP address.

Operation steps:

1. Click the "Business manage >DHCP Server config >Static leases config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| HCP Pool Config | Leases List Sta | atic Leases Config | Port Bind Config |           |        |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------|--------|
| C Add           |                 |                    |                  |           |        |
| SerialNum       | IP address      | MAC address        | s I              | DHCP Pool | handle |
|                 |                 |                    |                  |           |        |
| dd Static DH    | CP Config       |                    |                  | ×         |        |
|                 |                 |                    |                  |           |        |
| DHC             | P Pool aaaa     | ÷                  |                  |           |        |
| ID a            | ddress          |                    |                  |           |        |
| IF a            | eg:192.1        | 68.0.1             |                  |           |        |
| MAC a           | -               |                    |                  |           |        |
| -               |                 | MM:MM:MM           | :MM:MM           |           |        |
|                 | Add             | Return             |                  |           |        |
|                 | AGG             | Netuin             |                  |           |        |
|                 |                 |                    |                  |           |        |
| planations      |                 |                    |                  |           |        |

| Configuration item | Meaning                           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| DHCP Pool          | Fixed value, created address pool |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



| IP address  | Input the IP address needs to be banded  |
|-------------|------------------------------------------|
| MAC address | Input the MAC address needs to be banded |

# 5.12.5 Leases list

Operation steps

1. Click the "Business manage >DHCP Server config >LEASES list" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : Busines | is Manage / DHC | P Server Config      |                  |        |  |
|----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|--------|--|
| DHCP Pool Config           | Leases List     | Static Leases Config | Port Bind Config |        |  |
| C                          |                 |                      |                  |        |  |
| SerialNum                  | MAC addres      | s IP ad              | ldress           | Expire |  |

# 6 Route manage

# **6.1**L3 interface config

#### 1. Interface description

L3 interface is mainly for device IP address setting. On Web of this device, it only supports manual IPV4 setting.

| Business Manage 🗸 🗸   |              | india managa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | / L3 interface |        |                 |             |                                 |
|-----------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|-----------------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Route Manage          | Addinterface |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             | C Apply                         |
| o L3 interface        | Interface    | Enable                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Status         | Mode   | IP address      | Description | handle                          |
| O Show route          | vlanif1      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Up             | static | 192.168.1.60/24 |             | <u>i</u> C                      |
| o Static Route Config |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             |                                 |
| o RIP Config          |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             |                                 |
| o OSPF Config         |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             |                                 |
| o VRRP Config         |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             |                                 |
| o ARP Config          |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             |                                 |
| O ND-config           |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                |        |                 |             |                                 |
| o NQA-config          | Jump         | OK                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                |        | « < 1 > »       |             | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |
|                       |              | Contraction of the local division of the loc |                |        |                 |             |                                 |

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPV4               | IP address adopts Dotted Decimal Notation, e.g. 10.110.50.101 |

#### 3. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Route manage >L3 interface" menu in the navigation tree to enter the |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | interface, the default IPV4 address is: 192.168.1.254/24                        |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Step 2 | If user needs to change the IP, choose "Modify", fill relative address and gateway, |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | click "Add".                                                                        |
| Step 3 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running        |
|        | config" for saving the settings.                                                    |



After change IP, you need to login with the new IP address to enter the Web interface.

## 6.2 Show route

User can check the route information

Operation steps

1. Click the "Route manage > Show route" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Business Manage 🗸 🗸 🗸                   | Surrent Positi | ion : Route Manage / Show rou         | te   |      |         |             |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|------|------|---------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Route Manage 🖍                          | Codes:         |                                       |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| o L3 interface                          |                | I route, C – connected, S – static, P |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| O Show route                            | Serial         | Num Destination                       | Mask | Mark | Gateway | Output port |                                 |
|                                         | 1              | 192.168.1.0                           | 24   | C>*  |         | vlanif1     |                                 |
| <ul> <li>Static Route Config</li> </ul> | 2              | 239.255.255.250                       | 32   | K>*  |         | vlanif1     |                                 |
| o RIP Config                            |                |                                       |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| o OSPF Config                           |                |                                       |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| o VRRP Config                           |                |                                       |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| o ARP Config                            |                |                                       |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| o ND-config                             |                |                                       |      |      |         |             |                                 |
| o NQA-config                            | Jump           | ок                                    |      | << < | 1 > >>  |             | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |

#### Explanations

| Configuration | Meaning                                      |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                              |
| Gateway       |                                              |
| Destination   | Destination network IP address & Subnet mask |

# 6.3 Static config

Static route is manually set by the network administrator. In a network with a relatively simple network structure, the network administrator only needs to manually configure the static route to achieve network interoperation. Static route is typically configured in a small network with a fixed topology. Using appropriate static route in the network can reduce route selection problems and overload of route selection data flow, and improve the forwarding speed of packets. When the network changed, the network administrator needs to modify the configuration parameters again to ensure normal network communication.

Operation steps

1. Click the "Route manage > Static config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Business Manage 🛛 🗸   | Current Position : Route Manage / Static | Config |          |          |     |        |                                 |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|--------|----------|----------|-----|--------|---------------------------------|
| Route Manage          | C Add                                    |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| O L3 interface        | SerialNum Destination prefix             | Mask   | Gateway  | Distance | NQA | handle |                                 |
| O Show route          |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| O Static Route Config |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| o RIP Config          |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| o OSPF Config         |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| o VRRP Config         |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| o ARP Config          |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| o ND-config           |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| o NQA-config          | Jump OK                                  |        | << < 1 > | >>       |     |        | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |
|                       |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| Add static route      |                                          |        | ×        |          |     |        |                                 |
|                       |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| Destination prefix    | [·                                       |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| Destination prone     | eg:10.1.1.0/24 or 2000::3/64             |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| 0.1                   | -<br>-                                   |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| Gateway               | eg:20.1.1.3 or 2002::4                   |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
|                       |                                          |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| Distance              | 1                                        |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
|                       | scope:1-255                              |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| Track                 | Enable                                   |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
| NQA                   | ÷                                        |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
|                       | Datum                                    |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |
|                       | Add Return                               |        |          |          |     |        |                                 |

| Configuration      | Meaning                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| item               |                                                                      |
| Destination prefix | Set dest network of the route                                        |
| Gateway            | Set IP address of dest network route path previous and next nodes    |
| Distance           | Specified route managed distance. The distance shorter, the priority |
|                    | higher                                                               |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| SerialNum     | Destination<br>prefix | Mask | Gateway  | Distance |        |            |    |      |
|---------------|-----------------------|------|----------|----------|--------|------------|----|------|
| 1             | 10.1.1.0              | 24   | 20.1.1.3 | 1        | Delete |            |    |      |
| Total 1 Entry | 20 entrys per page    |      |          |          | 1,     | /1Page 💷 🔹 | Go | ► FI |

# 6.4 RIP config

RIP (Routing Information Protocol) is a relatively simple dynamic Routing Protocol, which is mainly used in small networks, such as campus network and simple regional network. RIP is generally not used for complex environments and large networks. As one of the earliest Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP), RIP IS still widely used today because of its simpler implementation and easier configuration and maintenance management than OSPF and is-is. RIP currently has both versions of RIPv1 and RIPv2.

RIP adopts the distance-vector algorithm, it uses the number of hops to measure the

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



distance to the destination address, and defines the path with the least number of hops as the optimal path. The number of hops from a router to a network directly connected to it is zero, and each hop is incremented by one. The number of jumps is called a metric. In order to limit the convergence time, RIP stipulates that the value range of measured value is integer between 0 and 15, and the value 16 represents infinity, that is, the destination network is unreachable. Because of this limitation, RIP is not suitable for large networks.

## 6.4.1 RIP global config

Operation steps

1. Click the "Route manage > RIP global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Business Manage 🛛 🗸             | Current Position: Route Manage / RIP Config |                             |                                                        |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Route Manage                    | RIP Global Confi                            | g Interface-c               | onfig RIP network setting                              |  |  |  |  |
| o L3 interface                  | C Apply                                     |                             |                                                        |  |  |  |  |
| o Show route                    | Enable                                      |                             |                                                        |  |  |  |  |
| o Static Route Config           | RIP version                                 | v182 🕈                      |                                                        |  |  |  |  |
| o RIP Config                    | Distribute                                  |                             | Distribut default route                                |  |  |  |  |
|                                 | metric                                      | 1                           | 1-16,Default:1.                                        |  |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>OSPF Config</li> </ul> | passive                                     |                             | Restrain route Interface                               |  |  |  |  |
| o VRRP Config                   | Update                                      | 30                          | Update timer of RouteTable.5-2147483647,Default:30.    |  |  |  |  |
| o ARP Config                    | Timeout                                     | 180                         | RouteInfo timeout.5-2147483647,Default:180.            |  |  |  |  |
| o ND-config                     | LOOP                                        | 120                         | Collection Timer of reclaim .5-2147483847,Default:120. |  |  |  |  |
| o NQA-config                    | Redistribute                                | Connected<br>Static<br>OSPF | Direct Inj<br>Static route setting<br>(OSPFv2)         |  |  |  |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration      | Meaning                                                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| item               |                                                                               |  |  |  |  |  |
| Enable RIP         | Choose enable or disable RIP, default is "disable"                            |  |  |  |  |  |
| <b>RIP version</b> | Choose RIP version, with optional RIPv1 & RIPv2° Default:                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | RIPv1&v2, transmit & receive RIPv1 & RIPv2 message. RIPv1 :                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | only transmit & receive RIPv1 message, adopts broadcast way when              |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | transmit                                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | RIPv2 : only transmit & receive RIPv2 message, adopts multicast way           |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | when transmit                                                                 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Distribute         | Choose enable or disable, default is "disable"                                |  |  |  |  |  |
| Passive            | Restrain the port to transmit route update message.                           |  |  |  |  |  |
| Metric             | 。 Setthe default value, range: 1-16, default is "1"                           |  |  |  |  |  |
| Redistribute       | Choose enable or disable external route(Static/ospf/bgp/connected) in         |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | RIP protocol, default is "disable"                                            |  |  |  |  |  |
| Update timer       | Fill time interval of RIP task sending update message, range:                 |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | 5-2147483647s                                                                 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Overtime timer     | Fill the valid date of the route. If no updated, then this route path will be |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | set unreach automatically, range: 5-2147483647s. Recommend setting:           |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | "180s"(6 update periods)                                                      |  |  |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Trash timer | Trash timer is the time that route from unreach to final deleted. If the           |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | route past become unreach, and there is no update during this period, this         |
|             | route will be deleted automatically, range: 5-2147483647, recommend setting "120s" |

### 6.4.2 RIP config

Operation steps

1. Click the "Route manage > RIP network setting" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| RIP Global Config C Add ne Network |                  | RIP network setting |
|------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 18 million (1990)                  | etwork           |                     |
| Network                            |                  |                     |
|                                    | handle           |                     |
|                                    |                  |                     |
| Add network                        |                  |                     |
|                                    | ~                |                     |
| ONetwork                           |                  | /                   |
|                                    | eg:10.1.1.2/24   |                     |
| OInterface                         | vlanif1          | \$                  |
|                                    | Interface choice |                     |
|                                    | Apply Retu       | irn                 |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item         | Meaning                                                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| RIP send version           | Choose the RIP version of sending message Auto:                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | Auto format                                                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | v1: Adopts RIPv1 format to send message                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | v2: Adopts RIPv2 format to send message                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | v1&2: Compatible with 2 formats                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| <b>RIP</b> receive version | Choose the RIP version of receiving message Auto:                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | Auto format                                                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | v1: Adopts RIPv1 format to receve message                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | v2: Adopts RIPv2 format to receive message v1&2:                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | Compatible with 2 formats                                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Auth type                  | Enable or disable the authentication of the the port when sending & |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | receiving message, default is "no auth". Only the devices adopt the |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | same auth type and password can be exchange RIP message; and only   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | RIPv2 supports message authentication function.                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            |                                                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Auth ID                    | Auth ID should be input when set MD5 keys, the ID is a number       |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | between 1-255                                                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Keys                       | Set the keys, the key is a character string                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Horizen | Coose if enable horizen function. Once enable, the device will not    |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|         | send back the route message which study from certain port, default is |
|         | "enable"                                                              |
|         |                                                                       |

# 6.5 OSPF config

OSPF(Open Shortest Path First) IS an interior gateway protocol(IGP). It is used for single autonomous system route control. It belongs to IGP.

OSPF is an IGP route protocol which developed by IETF OSPF group. It is designed for IP network, and it supports IP subnet and external route information mark. It allows message authentication and IP multicast.

## 6.5.1 OSPF global config

Click the "Route manage > OSPF global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:



Explanations

| Configuration | Meaning                                                                |  |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| item          |                                                                        |  |
| Route ID      | Force ASBR to generate a default route into the OSPF routing           |  |
|               | domain                                                                 |  |
| Redistribute  | Reassign routing metrics                                               |  |
| Spf timer     | Sets the time delay for routing calculation in a domain, the initial   |  |
|               | time interval, and the maximum time interval                           |  |
| Passive mode  | The passive mode of the interface is configured. When configured as    |  |
|               | a passive mode, the corresponding interface does not establish an      |  |
|               | adjacency relationship with other routers. The router will publish the |  |
|               | network directly connected to the passive interface in the router LSA  |  |
|               | in the manner of the peripheral network. By default, the interface     |  |
|               | does not enable passive mode.                                          |  |



1. Click the "Route manage > OSPF config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| work Config |
|-------------|
|             |
|             |
| handle      |
|             |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Interface          | Current configured interface list                                        |  |  |  |  |  |
| Router priority    | Configure router priority, range: 0-255, 0 means in corresponding        |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | network, the router can't be chosen as specified router. The bigger of   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | the value, the higher of the priority.                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | Resend interval: the resend interval of the interface, it is used for    |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | resend message between LSA & DD                                          |  |  |  |  |  |
| Hello interval     | Configure the time interval of the interface sending "hello". In the     |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | same network, only the hellow interval is the same will reach neighbor   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | connection relationship. Please make sure the Hello interval of all the  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | interfaces are the same. Default value is 10s.                           |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dead interval      | Configure the dead interval of router neighbor relationship failure.     |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | Within the specified time, if there is no Hello message from the         |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | neighbor, so the neighbor relationship is failed. Default value is 40s.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Cost               | Configure the interface path cost. OSPF calculate the shortest route     |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | forwarding data path from the interface which based on port cost         |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | value. If do not manual configure it, OSPF will calculate interface path |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | cost automatically; if auto calculate cost feature is disable, then will |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | adopts default value as interface path cost. Default value is 1.         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Network            | Configure the network type of the interface, the default type of         |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | Ethernet is broadcast.                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |



| Auth type | Configure the interface auth type. Only the interfaces with the same |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | auth type and password can reach neighbor relationship and           |
|           | synchronize LSA. It includes below type:                             |
|           | null: No auth                                                        |
|           | simple: Simple password auth.                                        |
|           | md5: Md5 auth                                                        |
|           | Simple password: Input simple auth password                          |
|           | MD5 password ID: Input password ID for md5 auth                      |
|           | MD5 password: Input password for md5 auth                            |

## 6.6 VRRP config

VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol) adds a set of routers that can assume gateway functions to the backup group to form a Virtual Router. VRRP's election mechanism determines which Router takes on forwarding tasks. Hosts in the LAN only need to configure the Virtual Router as the default gateway.

VRRP divides up a group of routers in a LAN, called a backup group. The Backup group consists of a Master router and multiple Backup routers that function as a virtual router.

VRRP backup group has the following characteristics:

Virtual routers have IP addresses, called virtual IP addresses. Hosts in the LAN only need to know the IP address of the virtual router and set it to the next hop of the default route.

Hosts in the network communicate with external networks via this virtual router.

The router in the backup group selects the Master router according to the priority, which assumes the gateway function. Other routers serve as Backup routers. When the Master router fails, it replaces Master to continue to perform the gateway responsibility, so as to guarantee the host in the network to continuously communicate with the external network.



#### VRRP Network schematic

As shown above, Router A, Router B and Router C make up a virtual Router. This virtual router has its own IP address. Hosts in the LAN set the virtual router as default gateway. The highest-priority routers in Router A, Router B and Router C act as Master routers, taking on the functions of gateways. The remaining two routers serve as Backup routers. Explanation:

The IP address of the virtual router can be the unassigned IP address of the network segment where the backup group is located, or it can be the same as the interface IP address of

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



a router in the backup group. The router whose interface IP address is the same as the virtual IP address is called the "IP address owner".

In the same VRRP backup group, only one IP address owner is allowed to be configured.

The status of the router in the Backup group can be Master, Backup and Initialize.

#### 1. The priority of the router in the backup group

VRRP determines the role of each router (Master router or Backup router) in the Backup group based on priority. The higher the priority, the more likely to become the Master router.

The value range of the priority of VRRP is 0 to 255 (the higher value indicates higher priority), the configurable range is 1 to 254, the priority 0 is reserved for special purposes for the system, and 255 is reserved for IP address owners. When the router is the owner of the IP address, its priority is always 255. Therefore, when there is an IP address owner in the backup group, it is the Master router as long as it is working properly.

#### 2. The working mode of the router in the backup group

Routers in a backup group work in two modes:

Non-preemptive mode: if the router in the Backup group works in non-preemptive mode, the Backup router will not become the Master router as long as the Master router does not fail, even if it is subsequently configured with higher priority.

Preemption: if the router in the backup group works in preemption mode, it will send a VRRP notification message to the public once it finds that its priority is higher than the current Master router. This causes the routers in the backup group to re-elect the Master router, and eventually replace the original Master router. Accordingly, the original Master router will become the Backup router.

#### 3. The authentication mode of the router in the backup group

In order to prevent illegal users constructing message attack backup groups, VRRP verifies received VRRP messages by adding authentication words to VRRP messages. VRRP offers two authentication options:

Simple: simple character authentication. The router sending the VRRP message fills the authentication word in the VRRP message, while the router receiving the VRRP message compares the authentication word in the received VRRP message with the locally configured authentication word. If the authentication word is the same, the received message is considered to be true and legitimate VRRP message; otherwise, the received message is considered an illegal message.

Md5: md5 authentication. The router sending the VRRP message USES the Authentication word and MD5 algorithm to abstract the VRRP message, and the result is saved in the Authentication Header. Routers receiving VRRP messages perform the same calculations using the authentication word and MD5 algorithm and compare the results with the content of the authentication header. If it is the same, the received message is considered to be true and legitimate VRRP message; otherwise, the received message is considered an illegal message.

In a secure network, users can also not set authentication mode.

### 6.6.1 VRRP config

Operation steps:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



Click the "Route manage > VRRP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| O L3 interface         | ment Position : F | Route Manage / | VRRP Config |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------|--------|----------------------------------------|-----------|---------|------------------|--------|---|
| O Show route           | VRRP-config       | VRRPTrack      | VRRP NQA    |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| O Static Route Config  | Add VRRP          |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  | C      | C |
| o RIP Config           |                   | 1000 184       | 10          |        | Broadcast<br>Interval time<br>Priority | Effective |         |                  |        |   |
| o OSPF Config          | Interface         | VRID Virtu     | el IP       | Status | Interval time Priority                 | priority  | Preempt | Dealy of preempt | handle |   |
| o VRRP Config          |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| o ARP Config           |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| O ND-config            |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| O NQA-config           |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| Network security 🗸 🗸   |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| Extend Management 🔍 🗸  |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| Svetam maintananna 🔍 🗸 |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |
| admin   Logout         |                   |                |             |        |                                        |           |         |                  |        |   |

#### Explanations

| Configuration | Meaning                                                |  |  |  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| item          |                                                        |  |  |  |
| Interface     | Current config list                                    |  |  |  |
| VRID          | Virtual route ID, scope: 1-255                         |  |  |  |
| Virtual IP    | Virtual route IP                                       |  |  |  |
| Broadcast     | VRRP message broadcast interval, scope:1-10, default:1 |  |  |  |
| interval      |                                                        |  |  |  |
| Priority      | Virtual route priority, scope: 1-254, default:100      |  |  |  |
| Preempt       | Enable/disable preempt                                 |  |  |  |
| Delay of      | Scope: 0-1000, default: 0                              |  |  |  |
| preempt       |                                                        |  |  |  |

### 6.6.2 VRRP track

Operation steps :

Click the "Route manage > VRRP config > VRRP track" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : F | Route Manage / VF | RRP Config       |        |  |  |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|--------|--|--|
| VRRP-config          | VRRPTrack         | VRRP NQA         |        |  |  |
| Add TRACK            |                   |                  |        |  |  |
|                      |                   |                  |        |  |  |
| VRID                 | TrackInterface    | Descend priority | handle |  |  |



| Add TRACK        |            |        | × |
|------------------|------------|--------|---|
| VRID             | +          |        |   |
| TrackInterface   | vlanif1    | +      |   |
| Descend priority | 0          |        |   |
|                  | scope:1-25 | 4      |   |
|                  | Apply      | Return |   |

| Configuration   | Meaning                                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| item            |                                                 |
| track Interface | Current config track Interface                  |
| VRID            | Virtual route ID, scope: 1-255                  |
| Priority        | Virtual route priority, scope: 1-254, default:0 |

## 6.6.3 VRRP nqa

Operation steps :

Click the "Route manage > VRRP config> VRRP nqa" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : Ro | oute Manage / 1 | VRRP Config      |        |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|--------|
| VRRP-config           | VRRPTrack       | VRRP NQA         |        |
| Add TRACK             |                 |                  |        |
| VRID                  | NQA             | Descend priority | handle |
| Add TRACK             | ¢               |                  | ×      |
|                       | a               |                  |        |
| V                     | RID             | ÷                |        |
| N                     | IQA 0           |                  |        |
| Descend prio          |                 |                  |        |
|                       | scope:1         | -254             |        |
|                       | Appl            | y Return         |        |
|                       |                 |                  |        |

#### Explanations

| Configuration | Meaning                                         |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                                 |
| VRID          | Virtual route ID, scope: 1-255                  |
| NQA           | scope:1-254                                     |
| Priority      | Virtual route priority, scope: 1-254, default:0 |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



# 6.7 ARP config

ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) is the Protocol for resolving IP addresses to Ethernet MAC addresses(or physical addresses).

In a LAN, when a host or other network device has data to send to another host or device, it must know the other's network layer address (IP address). But having an IP address is not enough, because IP datagram must be encapsulated in frames to be sent over the physical

network, so the sending station must also have the physical address of the receiving station, a mapping from the IP address to the physical address is required. ARP is the protocol for implementing this functionality.

After the device parses to the destination MAC address through ARP, it will add an IP address to MAC address mapping entry in its ARP table for subsequent forwarding of messages to the same destination.

ARP table items are divided into dynamic ARP table items and static ARP table items.

1. Dynamic ARP table items

Dynamic ARP table items are automatically generated and maintained by ARP protocol through ARP messages, which can be aged, updated by new ARP messages, and covered by static ARP table items. When reach the aging time or interface down, corresponding dynamic ARP table entries will be deleted.

2. Static ARP table items

Static ARP table entries are manually configured and maintained without aging or being covered by dynamic ARP table entries.

Configuring static ARP table entries increases communication security. The static ARP table entry can only use the specified MAC address when communicating with the device with specified IP address. The attack message cannot change the mapping relation between the IP address and MAC address of this table entry, thus protecting the normal communication between this device and the specified device.

Static ARP table entries are divided into long static ARP table entries, short static ARP table entries and multi-port ARP table entries.

When configuring a long static ARP table entry, in addition to the IP address and MAC address entries, you must configure the VLAN and outgoing interface for the ARP table entry. Long static ARP table entries can be used directly for message forwarding.

When configuring a short static ARP table entry, you only need to configure the IP address and MAC address entries. If the outgoing interface is a layer 3 Ethernet port, the short static ARP table item can be directly used for message forwarding. If the outgoing interface is a VLAN interface, short static ARP table entries cannot be directly used for message forwarding. When needs to send the IP packets, it needs to send ARP request packet first, if the received response message in the source IP address and source MAC address is the same as configured IP address and MAC address, it will add the interface of received ARP response message into the static ARP table entries, after this, it can be used for forwarding IP packets.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



The multi-port ARP table entry is formed by configuring the short static ARP table entry and the multicast MAC address table entry. If the MAC address in the short static ARP table entry is the same as the MAC address in the multicast MAC address table entry, the multi-port ARP table entry will be generated. If the device is sending IP packets, the multi-port ARP table entry guides IP packets to be sent from multiple outgoing ports.

### 6.7.1 Show ARP

Operation steps:

2. Click the "Route manage > ARP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "Show ARP" interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| o L3 interface        | Current Position: Route Mar | nage / ARP-config    |                       |           |        |                               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------|--------|-------------------------------|
| O Show route          | show ARP Static             | ARP ARP Config       |                       |           |        |                               |
| o Static Route Config | Interface:                  | Cleardynamic Arp Cle | arstatic Arp One-clic | k Binding |        |                               |
| o RIP Config          | IP address                  | MAC                  | Output port           | Туре      | Expire | handle                        |
| o OSPF Config         | 192.168.1.33                | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec    | vlanif1               | Dyn       | 119    | Ŵ                             |
| VRRP Config           |                             |                      |                       |           |        |                               |
| ARP Config            |                             |                      |                       |           |        |                               |
| ND-config             |                             |                      |                       |           |        |                               |
| NQA-config            |                             |                      |                       |           |        |                               |
| work security 🗸 🗸     |                             |                      |                       |           |        |                               |
| end Management 🛛 🛩    | Jump                        |                      | « < 1 >               | >>        |        | Total1Page , 20 entrys per pa |
| tam maintananna 🗸 🗸   |                             |                      |                       |           |        |                               |

### 6.7.2 Static ARP

Operation steps:

Click the "Route manage > ARP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "Static ARP "interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| how APP Static APP APP Config<br>C Add<br>SerielNum IP eddress MAC hendle<br>Add static ARP X<br>IP eddress ==:192.168.1.1<br>MAC ==::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::: | rent Position : Route M | Manage / ARP Config |                      |        |  |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------|--|--|
| SerielNum IP address MAC     Add static ARP     IP address     eg:192.168.1.1     MAC        eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-00001     add     Return                      | iow ARP Static          | ARP ARP Config      |                      |        |  |  |
| Add static ARP X                                                                                                                                                        | C Add                   |                     |                      |        |  |  |
| IP address<br>eg:192.168.1.1<br>MAC<br>eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-00001<br>Add Return                                                                                 | SerialNum IP addr       | ress                | MAC                  | handle |  |  |
| IP address<br>eg:192.168.1.1<br>MAC<br>eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-00001<br>Add Return                                                                                 |                         |                     |                      |        |  |  |
| IP address<br>eg:192.168.1.1<br>MAC<br>eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-00001<br>Add Return                                                                                 | Add static ARF          | ס                   |                      | ×      |  |  |
| eg:192.168.1.1<br>MAC<br>eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-0000-00001<br>Add Return                                                                                          |                         |                     |                      |        |  |  |
| eg:192.168.1.1<br>MAC<br>eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-0000-00001<br>Add Return                                                                                          | IP addre                | 220                 |                      |        |  |  |
| eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-0000-0001                                                                                                                                  |                         |                     | 1                    |        |  |  |
| eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-0000-0001                                                                                                                                  | M                       |                     |                      |        |  |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                         |                         |                     | 3:04:05 or 0000-0000 | -0001  |  |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                         |                         | Add                 | Beturn               |        |  |  |
| planations                                                                                                                                                              |                         |                     |                      |        |  |  |
| planations                                                                                                                                                              |                         |                     |                      |        |  |  |
| planations                                                                                                                                                              |                         |                     |                      |        |  |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                         | nlanations              |                     |                      |        |  |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                         | rununono                |                     |                      |        |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Configuration | Meaning                                         |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| item          |                                                 |
| IP address    | Added static IP                                 |
| Mac           | Mac address which matched with IP address which |

### 6.7.3 ARP age-time

#### **Operation steps:**

1. Click the "Route manage > ARP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "ARP age-time" interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : | Route Manage       | / ARP Config               |             |  |  |  |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|-------------|--|--|--|
| show ARP           | Static ARP         | ARP Config                 |             |  |  |  |
| C A                | pply               |                            |             |  |  |  |
| Interface          | AF                 | RP age-time( Seconds)      | Arp-proxy   |  |  |  |
| vlanif1            | 18                 | 0                          |             |  |  |  |
| timeout: N         | /lin is 30, max is | s 2147483647, default is 1 | 80 seconds. |  |  |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| AGE-TIME           | Range: 1-2147483647s, default is 600s |

# 6.8ND config

ND Snooping is a security feature for IPv6 ND (Neighbor Discovery) for use in twolayer switched network environments. By listening to the Neighbor request message NS (Neighbor Solicitation) in the DAD (Duplicate Address Detection) process of the user to establish ND Snooping dynamic binding table. Thus, the source IPv6 address, source MAC address, VLAN, entry port and other information of the message are recorded to prevent subsequent ND message attacks by impersonating users and impersonating gateways.

### 6.8.1 ND list

#### **Operation steps:**

1. Click the "Route manage >ND config >ND list" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "ARP age-time"interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| O Show route          | Clear                                |                   |             |      |               |                   |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------|------|---------------|-------------------|
| o Static Route Config | IP address                           | MAC               | Output port | Туре | Expire        | handle            |
| o RIP Config          | fdf2:dddb:8941::721                  | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec | vlanif1     | Dyn  | 1189          | <del>ا</del>      |
| o OSPF Config         | fdf2:dddb:8941:0:890:d7f3:51e8:3776  | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec | vlanif1     | Dyn  | 1172          | Ē                 |
|                       | fdf2:dddb:8941:0:64e9:8690:68ae:2fa5 | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec | vlanif1     | Dyn  | 1172          | Ē                 |
| o VRRP Config         | fe80::2226:23ff:fe24:5270            | 20:26:23:24:52:70 | vlanif1     | Dyn  | 1133          | 回                 |
| o ARP Config          | fe80::64e9:8690:68ae:2fa5            | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec | vlanif1     | Dyn  | 1172          | Đ                 |
| o ND-config           |                                      |                   |             |      |               |                   |
| o NQA-config          |                                      |                   |             |      |               |                   |
| etwark security 🗸 🗸   | Jump OK                              | د د 1 ه           | >>          |      | Total1Page,20 | ) entrys per page |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



ExplanationsConfiguration itemMeaningIP addressSnooping IPv6 addressmacLocal macOutput portOutput porttypeBoth static and dynamicExpireAge time

### 6.8.2 Static ND

#### **Operation steps:**

1. Click the "Route manage >ND config >Static ND" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : Route Man                      | aga / ND -config                          |           |             |        |  |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------|-------------|--------|--|
| ND list Static ND                                 |                                           |           |             |        |  |
| C Add                                             |                                           |           |             |        |  |
| SerialNum IP address                              | 5                                         | MAC       | Output port | handle |  |
| Add Static ND<br>IP address<br>MAC<br>Output port | eg:2000::1 eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-4 | 0000-0001 |             |        |  |

# 6.9NQA config

Network Quality Analysis (NQA) is a real-time Network performance detection and statistics technology, which can calculate Network information such as response time, Network jitter, packet loss rate and so on.NQA can monitor network QoS in real time, and diagnose and locate network failure effectively.

| Route Manage A Cu     | ment Position : Route | Manage / NQA-config |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------|-----------|---------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| o L3 interface        |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| O Show route          | C AddNQA              |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| o Static Route Config | ID Status             | DestIP              | SourcelP | Frequency | timeout | Threshold | TrackEnable | handle                     |
| o RIP Config          |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| o OSPF Config         |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| o VRRP Config         |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| o ARP Config          |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| o ND-config           |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| o NQA-config          |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| Network security 🗸 🗸  |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |
| Extend Management 🗸 🗸 | Jump                  |                     | ~~       | < 1 > >>  |         |           | Tota        | 1Page , 20 entrys per page |
|                       |                       |                     |          |           |         |           |             |                            |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



| Add NQA   | ×                            |
|-----------|------------------------------|
| ID        |                              |
| DestIP    | scope:1-255                  |
| SourceIP  | eg:192.168:1.1               |
| Frequency | eg:192.168.1.2               |
| timeout   | scope:5-300, Default:30      |
| Threshold | scope:1-5 Seconds, Default:3 |
| Track     | scope:1-100, Default:10      |
|           | Apply Return                 |
|           |                              |

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                               |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ID                 | Test group number                                                     |
| Dest IP            | Destination access IP address                                         |
| Source IP          | Source IP address                                                     |
| Frequency          | The time interval at which NQA test cases automatically execute tests |
| timeout            | Number of probes per test                                             |
| Threshold          | The timeout of a probe                                                |
| track              | Track enable\disable                                                  |

# 7 Network security

# 7.1 Access control

As the network size and flow data enlarge, control the network security and distribute the bandwidth become very important. It can prevent unlegal user to access the network by data packets filtering. At the same time, it can save the data flow. ACL adopts matched messages rules to filter the data packets.

#### Operation steps

1. Click the "network security >Access control" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:





| Configuration        | Submenu                               | meaning                        |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| item                 |                                       |                                |
| Set the filter rules | Disable                               | Default is disable             |
|                      | Meet the rules, allowed access this   |                                |
|                      | device                                |                                |
|                      | Meet the rules, forbidden access this |                                |
|                      | device                                |                                |
| Set the access rule  | IP address                            | Input IP address               |
|                      | Service                               | All include both: http, telnet |

# Attentions

Default is "disable". If specify, Allowed, all host which not matched rule list will be forbidden, please add rule list first.

#### 2.

Please add the device access rule first. Click the "Network security >Access control >configure access rule for system" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface,

192.168.0.11/24, select "all" service, click "add", check "IP listed below, allowed access this device", click "Apply", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| ntigure access                        | policy, detault is disabled. It spec |                               |                                                 |                 |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                       |                                      | iny anowes, an nost which not | matched rule list will be forbidden. Please add | rule list tirst |
| Disable                               |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
| IP listed below,                      | allowed access this device.          |                               |                                                 |                 |
| IP listed below,                      | forbidden access this device.        |                               |                                                 |                 |
| an or the second second second second |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
|                                       |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
| analy                                 |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
| Apply                                 |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
|                                       |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
| Apply                                 |                                      |                               |                                                 |                 |
| C Add                                 | IP address                           | Sanára                        | handla                                          |                 |
| Apply<br>C Add<br>SerialNum           | IP address                           | Service                       | handle<br>M                                     |                 |

# 7.2 Attack protection config

To enhance the security of the switch, it is enable to open attack protection.

#### Operation steps

1. Click the "Network security >Attack protection" menu in the navigation tree to enter the

|     | Interface Manage   | ~   | Current Position : Network secur | rity / Attack protect | lion                        |                           |      |
|-----|--------------------|-----|----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|------|
|     | Business Manage    | ~   |                                  |                       |                             |                           |      |
|     | Route Manage       | ~   | C Apply                          |                       |                             |                           |      |
|     | Network security   | ~   | Ignor PING                       | O Enable              | <ul> <li>Disable</li> </ul> | Ignore local device PING  |      |
|     | o Access Control   |     | SYN DOS ATTACK                   | O Enable              | O Disable                   | TCP SYN ATTACK protection |      |
|     | O Attack protectio | n i |                                  |                       |                             |                           |      |
| AV  | o ACL Config       |     |                                  |                       |                             |                           | 7024 |
| ~ • | o Traffic monitor  |     |                                  |                       |                             |                           | 024  |
|     | O Alarm-config     |     |                                  |                       |                             |                           |      |
|     | o 802.1x Config    |     |                                  |                       |                             |                           |      |
|     | Extend Management  | ~   |                                  |                       |                             |                           |      |
|     | 8.51               |     |                                  |                       |                             |                           |      |



interface, enable "Ignore local device PING" & "TCP SYN ATTACK protection", set the value of "CPU receive threshold", click apply, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Explanations |
|--------------|
|--------------|

| Configuration item    | Meaning                                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ignore ping packet    | Ignore ping packet's attack                                    |
| SYN DOS attack        | TCP SYN attack protection                                      |
| protection            |                                                                |
| CPU receive threshold | Scope: 0-100000 (defaul:0, means no rate limit), 超 if over the |
|                       | scope, no rate receive                                         |

## 7.3 ACL config

The Access Control List (ACL) can realize the packet filtering via configuration of matching rules and processing operations on packets.

After the port of switch receives a packet, it analyzes the fields in the packet based on the ACL rules applied on the current port. After identifying a specific packet, the switch allows or

blocks the corresponding packet from passing through according to a preset policy.

The packet matching rules defined by the ACLs can also be referenced by other functions that need to distinguish traffic, such as the definition of traffic classification rules in QoS.

The ACL is a collection of permission and denial conditions that apply to packets. When receiving a packet on an interface, the switch compares the packet field with the ACL used, and judges whether the packet is allowed to be forwarded based on the criteria specified in the access control list. The ACL can classify the packets with a series of matching conditions, which can be the source MAC address, destination MAC address, VLAN, etc. of the packet.

### 7.3.1 MAC ACL config

Layer 2 ACL: Set the rules according to source MAC address, Dest MAC address, VLAN priority, layer 2 protocols, etc.

Operation steps

1. Click the "Network security >ACL config > MAC ACL config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| ACL GROUP Config MAC | C ACL Config | IP ACL Cont | fig                |                  |                    |            |        |
|----------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------|--------|
| C AddGroup Ad        | ddRule       |             |                    |                  |                    |            |        |
| Group RuleID ACTION  | 4            | EtherType   | SourceMAC/<br>Mask | DestMAC/<br>Mask | SourcelP<br>DestIP | Time-Range | handle |
|                      |              |             |                    |                  |                    |            |        |
|                      | Add MAC      | C Group     |                    |                  |                    | ×          |        |
|                      |              |             |                    |                  |                    |            |        |
|                      |              |             |                    |                  |                    |            |        |
|                      |              | Group ID    |                    |                  |                    |            |        |
|                      |              | Group IE    | scope:1-99         |                  |                    |            |        |
|                      |              | Group IE    | scope:1-99         | elete            |                    |            |        |
|                      |              | Group ID    | scope:1-99         | elete            |                    |            |        |



| Add MAC Ru | e      |       |                                   |
|------------|--------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| Group ID   | 1 🕈    |       |                                   |
| RuleID     |        |       | scope:1-127                       |
| ACTION     | deny 🗢 |       | ACTION                            |
| SourceMAC  |        |       | If no Input , anything is valid   |
| Mask       | 2      |       |                                   |
| DestMAC    |        |       | If no Input , anything is valid   |
| Mask       |        |       |                                   |
| ETHER type |        |       | Format:0xHHHH                     |
| SourceIP   |        |       | format:A.B.C.D or any if no input |
| DestIP     |        |       | format:A.B.C.D or any if no input |
| Rate       |        | Burst | scope::64-1000000 kbps.           |
| Time-Range | \$     |       | any time is valid if no input     |

| Emplanations       |                                                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration item | Meaning                                                       |
| Group ID           | Layer 2 ACL range:1-99                                        |
| Rule               | Scope: 1-127                                                  |
| Action             | ACL rules:"permit" or"deny"                                   |
| Source MAC         | Input ACL rule source MAC address. Format: H-H-H <sub>o</sub> |
| Dest MAC           | Input ACL rule dest MAC address. Format:H-H-H <sub>o</sub>    |
| Time-Range name    | Input the time-Range name                                     |
|                    |                                                               |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Group ID | RuleID | ACTION | SourceMAC | DestMAC | SourceIP | DestIP | Time-<br>Range |
|----------|--------|--------|-----------|---------|----------|--------|----------------|
| 1        |        |        |           |         |          |        |                |
|          | 1      | deny   | any       | any     | any      | any    |                |

### 7.3.2 IP ACL config

Based on IP ACL (Basic IP ACL) : Set the rules based on the source IP address of the packet, ACL ID range :  $100{\sim}999_{\circ}$ 

Senior IP ACL (Advanced IP ACL) : Set the rules based on the source IP address, dest IP address, IP's protocols, etc. ACL ID range : 100~999

Operation steps

1. Click the "Network security >ACL config > IP ACL config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



|                                                            | atwork security / ACL Config |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|------|
| CL GROUP Cor                                               |                              | IP ACL Config                                                                                                      |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| C AddG                                                     | Broup AddRule                | <b>0</b>                                                                                                           | D-41D                                                                                                        |          |            |      |
| Group<br>ID<br>RuleID                                      | ACTION                       | protocol Source/P<br>Source/Mask                                                                                   | SourcePort DestIP<br>DestMask                                                                                | DestPort | Time-Range | hand |
|                                                            |                              |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| Add IP Grou                                                | dr                           |                                                                                                                    | ×                                                                                                            |          |            |      |
|                                                            |                              |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|                                                            | Group ID                     |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|                                                            | scope:10                     | )-999                                                                                                              |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|                                                            | Add                          | Delete                                                                                                             |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|                                                            |                              |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| Add IP ACL C                                               | Config                       |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              | ×        |            |      |
|                                                            |                              |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| Group ID                                                   | 100 🗢                        |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| RuleID                                                     |                              | scope:1-127                                                                                                        |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| ACTION                                                     | deny 🗢                       | ACTION                                                                                                             |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| protocol                                                   | any 🗢                        |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|                                                            |                              |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
| SourcelP                                                   |                              | format:A.B.C.D or any                                                                                              | / if no input                                                                                                |          |            |      |
| SourceIP<br>SourceMask                                     |                              | format:A.B.C.D or an                                                                                               |                                                                                                              |          |            |      |
|                                                            |                              |                                                                                                                    | y if no input                                                                                                |          |            |      |
| SourceMask                                                 |                              | format:A.B.C.D or any                                                                                              | y if no input<br>y port if no input                                                                          |          |            |      |
| SourceMask<br>SourcePort                                   |                              | format:A.B.C.D or any<br>scope is 0-65535,an<br>format:A.B.C.D or any                                              | y if no input<br>y port if no input<br>y if no input                                                         |          |            |      |
| SourceMask<br>SourcePort<br>DestIP                         |                              | format:A.B.C.D or an<br>scope is 0-65535,an<br>format:A.B.C.D or an<br>format:A.B.C.D or an                        | y if no input<br>y port if no input<br>y if no input<br>y if no input                                        |          |            |      |
| SourceMask<br>SourcePort<br>DestIP<br>DestMask<br>DestPort |                              | format:A.B.C.D or an<br>scope is 0-65535,an<br>format:A.B.C.D or an<br>format:A.B.C.D or an<br>scope is 0-65535,an | y if no input<br>y port if no input<br>y if no input<br>y if no input<br>y port if no input                  |          |            |      |
| SourceMask<br>SourcePort<br>DestIP<br>DestMask             | ●                            | format:A.B.C.D or an<br>scope is 0-65535,an<br>format:A.B.C.D or an<br>format:A.B.C.D or an<br>scope is 0-65535,an | y if no input<br>y port if no input<br>y if no input<br>y if no input<br>y port if no input<br>1000000 kbps. |          |            |      |

| Configuration item | Meaning                             |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Group ID           | Layer 2 ACL range:100-999           |
| Rule               | Scope: 1-127                        |
| Action             | ACL rules:"permit" or"deny"         |
| Protocol           | Type: Any, icmp, igmp, ip, tcp, udp |
| Source IP          | Input ACL rule source IP            |
| Source Mask        | Input ACL rule source Mask          |
| Source port        | Input ACL rule source port          |
| Dest IP            | Input ACL rule dest IP              |
| Dest Mask          | Input ACL rule dest Mask            |
| Dest port          | Input ACL rule dest port            |
| Time-Range name    | Input time-range name               |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



- 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.
- 3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Group<br>ID | RuleID | ACTION | protocol | SourceIP | SourceMask | SourcePort | DestIP | DestMask | DestPort | TimeRange |
|-------------|--------|--------|----------|----------|------------|------------|--------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 100         |        |        |          |          |            |            |        |          |          |           |
|             | 1      | permit | any      | any      | any        |            | any    | any      |          |           |
|             | 2      | deny   | igmp     | any      | any        |            | any    | any      |          |           |

## 7.3.3 ACL GROUP config

After creating the list, it has to be applicated to the ports that you need to set.

Operation steps :

Click the "Network security >ACL config > ACL GROUP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:



Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| MAC ACL ID         | The created MAC ACL ID to be applicated on the ports |
| IP ACL ID          | The created IP ACL ID to be applicated on the ports  |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Port   | MACACL ListID | IPACL ListID |  |
|--------|---------------|--------------|--|
| ge1/28 | 1             | 100          |  |

#E.G.

Definition method of time - based ACL.

Suppose an organization wants to use a time based ACL implementation on the switch: Monday to Friday (weekday) mornings from 8:00 to 12:00, afternoons from 13:30 to 17:30, allow for email only, and non-work hours allow for all access.

Steps

 Define time range. Click the "network security > TIME RANGE config" menu in the navigation tree, enter the "TIME RANGE config" interface, select create "Add TIME", and enter the morning of Monday to Friday (working day) from 8:00 to 12:00, and from 13:30 to 17:30, respectively, as shown in the figure below.

| C Add Time |                                |        |
|------------|--------------------------------|--------|
| Name       | Time                           | handle |
| 11         | Periodic 00:00 – 23:00 workday | ۵.     |

2. Adit ACL. Click the "Network security >ACL config > IP ACL config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Group<br>ID | RuleID | ACTION | protocol | SourceIP | SourceMask | SourcePort | DestIP | DestMask | DestPort | TimeRange |
|-------------|--------|--------|----------|----------|------------|------------|--------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 100         |        |        |          |          |            |            |        |          |          |           |
|             | 1      | permit | tcp      | any      | any        |            | any    | any      | 25       | work      |
|             | 2      | permit | tcp      | any      | any        |            | any    | any      | 110      | work      |
|             | 3      | permit | udp      | any      | any        |            | any    | any      |          | work      |
|             | 4      | deny   | ip       | any      | any        |            | any    | any      |          | work      |
|             | 5      | permit | any      | any      | any        |            | any    | any      |          |           |

3. ACL100 to be applicated on ge1/1. Click the "Network security >ACL config >ACL GROUP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port  | MACACL ListID | IPACL ListID |  |
|-------|---------------|--------------|--|
| ge1/1 |               | 100          |  |

# 7.4 Traffic monitor

Monitor the port rate

Operation steps

1. Click the "Network security >Traffic monitor" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:



| Interface Manage    | ~      | Current Position | Network security       | / Traffic monitor |              |            |        |         |         |   |
|---------------------|--------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------|------------|--------|---------|---------|---|
| Business Manage     | Ŷ      | C                | Add                    |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| Route Manage        | ~      | Port             |                        | Direction         |              | Rate       |        | handle  |         |   |
| Network security    | ~      |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| O Access Control    |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| O Attack protection | on     |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| o ACL Config        |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| O Traffic monitor   |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| O Alarm-config      |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| o 802.1x Config     |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| Extend Management   | ~      |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
|                     |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| Add Traffic         | moni   | tor              |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         | × |
|                     |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
|                     |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
|                     |        | ge1/1            | ge1/2                  | <b>g</b> e1/3     | □ge1/4       | _ge1/5 (   | ge1/6  | ge1/7 [ | ]ge1/8  |   |
|                     | Port   | □ae1/9           | □ae1/10                | <b>D</b> oe1/11   | □ae1/12      | □ae1/13    | ae1/14 | 4ge1/15 | lae1/16 |   |
|                     |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         | 9-1-    |   |
|                     |        | Lige1/25         | ge1/26                 | ge1/2/            | ge1/28       | Select All |        |         |         |   |
| Dire                | ection | ingress          | ÷                      |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
|                     |        |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| Rate-o              | config |                  |                        |                   |              |            |        |         |         |   |
| Rate-o              | config | unit:Bytes p     | er seconds,R           | ate threshold     | d scope:0–10 | )73741824  |        |         |         |   |
| Rate-o              | config |                  |                        | ate threshold     | l scope:0–10 | )73741824  |        |         |         |   |
| Rate-o              | config | unit:Bytes p     | er seconds,R<br>Return | ate threshold     | l scope:0–10 | )73741824  |        |         |         |   |

| Configuration item | meaning                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Direction          | Ingress or egress          |
| Rate -config       | Scope: 0-1073741824 byte/s |

# **7.5** Alarm config**7.5.1** System alarm

The device supports power alarm, user can configure it according.

1. Click the "Network security > Alarm config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

|                                | v               |                                      |                                                    |  |  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--|--|
|                                | System alarm    | Link alarm                           |                                                    |  |  |
|                                | C Appl          | Y                                    |                                                    |  |  |
|                                | ^ Enable        |                                      |                                                    |  |  |
| O Access Control               | CPU             | 0 %                                  | scope:30-100, Send alarm while overload threshold. |  |  |
| O Attack protection            | Memory          | 0 %                                  | scope:30-100                                       |  |  |
| o ACL Config                   | Power           |                                      |                                                    |  |  |
| O Traffic monitor              | Packet Error    |                                      |                                                    |  |  |
|                                | CPU usage       | 9.0%                                 |                                                    |  |  |
| Alarm-config     802.1x Config | Memory<br>usage | 77% (free:27144 KB, total:116328 KB) |                                                    |  |  |
| O 802.1X Coning                | Alarm           |                                      |                                                    |  |  |
|                                | ×               |                                      |                                                    |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Expla | nations |
|-------|---------|
|-------|---------|

| Configuration item | Meaning                        |  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Enable             | Alarm setting                  |  |
| Power              | wer Enable/disable power alarm |  |

### 7.5.2 Link alarm

User can configure Link alarm according.

1. Click the "Network security > Alarm config >Link alarm" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| nt Position : | Network security / Alarm-config |  |
|---------------|---------------------------------|--|
| stem alarm    | Link alarm                      |  |
| C A           | pply                            |  |
| ake effect wi | hile global alarm enable        |  |
| Port          | Enable                          |  |
| *             |                                 |  |
| ge1/1         |                                 |  |
| ge1/2         |                                 |  |
| ge1/3         |                                 |  |
| ge1/4         |                                 |  |
| ge1/5         |                                 |  |
| ge1/6         |                                 |  |
| ge1/7         |                                 |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning       |  |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| Port               | Enable or not |  |

# **7.6**802.1x config

The 802.1X protocol is a port-based network access control protocol that addresses the authentication and security issues in Ethernet, which can authenticate the accessed client devices on the port of the LAN where the devices access, so as to control the access of client devices to network resources.

The 802.1X system consists of three entities: Client, Device, and Authentication server as shown in the figure below.

The system used 802.1x is a typical Client/Server structure, it includes Supplicant System (Client), Authenticator System (Terminal Device) & Authentication Server System (Authentication server). It is shown as the following figure




The client is a user terminal device that requests to access the LAN, which shall be authenticated by the device in the LAN. The client shall have the software that supports 802.1X authentication.

The device is a network device to control the client's access to the LAN, which is located between the client and the authentication server, provides the client with the port (physical or logical) for accessing the LAN, and authenticate the client connected through the interaction with the server.

The authentication server is used to authenticate, authorize, and charge clients, which is usually a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server. The authentication server verifies the validity of the client based on the client authentication information sent from the device, and transmit the authentication result to the device, which judges whether the client is allowed to access the LAN. In some small-scale networks, the device may also take place of the role of the authentication server, that is, the device locally authenticates, authorizes, and charges the client.



802.1x working mode

IEEE 802.1x authenticator system adopts EAP(Extensible Authentication Protocol) to exchange the authenticator information between the client and authenticator server.

AVCOMM technologies Inc.





- Between client PAE and device PAE, EAP protocol message uses EAPOL encapsulation format, it is directly hosted in a LAN environment.
- Between PAE on the device end and RADIUS server, EAP protocol messages can use EAPOR (EAP Over RADIUS) packaging format, which is hosted in RADIUS protocol; It can also be terminated by PAE on the device end, and PAP protocol or CHAP protocol messages are transmitted between PAE on the device end and RADIUS server
- When the user is authenticated, the authentication server passes the user's relevant information to the device end, where PAE determines the authorization/unauthorization status of the controlled port according to the instructions of the RADIUS server (Accept or Reject).

### 7.6.1 Global config

Network access control based on 802.1X access control: Auth & control to the access devices which connect with the interface of LAN.

Operation steps :

1. Click the "Network security >802.1x config > global config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage 🛛 🗸  | Current Position : N | etwork security / | 802.1× Config      |                              |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Business Manage 🛛 🗸   | Global Config        | Port Config       | User Config        |                              |
| Route Manage 🗸 🗸 🗸    | C Appl               | v .               |                    |                              |
| Network security      | 802.1x auth          | Config            |                    |                              |
| o Access Control      | Mode                 |                   | 🔿 Enable 🧿 Disable |                              |
| O Attack protection   | Radius server        | r.                | C Remote O Local   |                              |
| o ACL Config          | reauth-period        | d                 | 30                 | unit: Seconds scope: 1~65535 |
| o Traffic monitor     | Radius serve         | r Config          |                    |                              |
| o Alarm-config        | IP address           |                   | 127.0.0.1          |                              |
| o 802.1x Config       | Port                 |                   | 1812               | snons:1~95585                |
| Extend Management 🗸 🗸 |                      |                   |                    |                              |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                                |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Mode               | Single option. With enable & disable option, default is disable        |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |                                                                        |  |  |  |  |  |
| Radius server      | Single option. With remote & local option, default is local            |  |  |  |  |  |
| Reauth-period      | Authentication update interval, default is 30 seconds, range: 1~65535. |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | After the successful authentication of 802.1x, the user shall be re-   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | authenticated at a certain interval, which shall be controlled by a    |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | re-authentication timer.                                               |  |  |  |  |  |
| IP address         | Enter the Radius server to configure the IP address                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port               | Enter the Radius server to configure the IP port. Scope: 1 ~ 65535     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Auth password      | Consistent with Radius server authentication password                  |  |  |  |  |  |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.

www.avcomm.us

333 West Loop N, St 460, Houston, TX 77024



| Maximum        | Number of certification retries. Scope: 1 ~ 10                          |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| reauthenticate | After the switch sends the authentication request frame to the user for |  |  |  |  |  |
|                | the first time, no response from the user is received within the        |  |  |  |  |  |
|                | specified time, and the switch will send the authentication request to  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                | the user again. The switch no longer sends the authentication request   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                | to the user repeatedly when the sending number reaches its maximum.     |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "Apply", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : Network security / 8 | 302.1x Config      |                              |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Global Config Port Config               | User Config        |                              |
| C Apply                                 |                    |                              |
| 802.1x auth Config                      |                    |                              |
| Mode                                    | O Enable O Disable |                              |
| Radius server                           | Remote O Local     |                              |
| reauth-period                           | 30                 | unit: Seconds scope: 1~65535 |
| Radius server Config                    |                    |                              |
| IP address                              | 127.0.0.1          |                              |
| Port                                    | 1812               | annne:1~95525                |

### 7.6.2 Port config

Network access control based on 802.1X access control: Auth & control to the access devices which connect with the interface of LAN.

Operation steps:

1. Click the "Network security >802.1x config > port config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Current Position : N | Network security / | 802.1x Config |    |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------|----|
| Global Config        | Port Config        | User Config   |    |
| Apply                |                    |               |    |
| Port                 | Enable             | Auth mode     |    |
| *                    | *                  | *             | \$ |
| ge1/1                |                    | Auto          | ÷  |
| ge1/2                |                    | Auto          | ÷  |
| ge1/3                |                    | Auto          | \$ |
| ge1/4                |                    | Auto          | \$ |
| ge1/5                |                    | Auto          | ¢  |
| ge1/6                |                    | Auto          | \$ |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Port               | Single choice, fixed value |
| Auth mode          | Choose the port auth mode: |

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Auto mode            |
|----------------------|
| Force auth success   |
| Force auth fail      |
| Mac auth             |
| Default is auto mode |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Port  | Enable | Auth mode       | Auth mode |  |  |  |  |
|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| *     | * •    | *               | Ŧ         |  |  |  |  |
| ge1/1 |        | Force auth succ | ess 🔻     |  |  |  |  |
| ge1/2 | 1      | Force auth fail | •         |  |  |  |  |
| ge1/3 |        | MACAuth         | •         |  |  |  |  |
| ge1/4 |        | Auto            | v         |  |  |  |  |

### 7.6.3 User config

Network access control based on 802.1X access control: Auth & control to the access devices which connect with the interface of LAN.

Operation steps:

1. Click the "Network security >802.1x config > user config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| assword | Auth type | handle |     |
|---------|-----------|--------|-----|
|         |           | ×      |     |
|         |           |        |     |
|         |           |        |     |
|         |           |        |     |
|         |           | md5    | md5 |

Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| User               | User name                                                 |
| Password           | Password                                                  |
| Authentication     | It includes MD5, TLS, MSCHAPV2, PEAP, TTLS, TLV, GTC, SIM |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:



| User name | Password | Auth type |        |  |
|-----------|----------|-----------|--------|--|
| admin1    | 1233     | md5       | Delete |  |

## 8 Extend management 8.1 onvif-config

Click the "Extended Manage >onvif-config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, as shown in the figure below.

| Interface Manage   | ~       | Current Position : Ext | and Management / onvif-config | 1                    |       |      |                                 |
|--------------------|---------|------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------|------|---------------------------------|
| Business Manage    | ~       | ONVIF devices          | ONVIF NVT                     |                      |       |      |                                 |
| Route Manage       | ~       | C Discovery            |                               |                      |       |      | Clear offline Clear all         |
| Network security   | ~       | IP                     | MAC                           | Model/Name           | Local | Port | Status                          |
| Extend Management  | ^       |                        |                               |                      |       |      |                                 |
| O ONVIF-config     |         |                        |                               |                      |       |      |                                 |
| O QINQ-config      |         |                        |                               |                      |       |      |                                 |
| o Time Range Con   | nfig    |                        |                               |                      |       |      |                                 |
| o Devices-config   |         |                        |                               |                      |       |      |                                 |
| o VOIP-config      |         |                        |                               |                      |       |      |                                 |
| System maintenance | . ~     | Jump                   | к                             | « « <mark>1</mark> » | **    |      | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |
| Current Position   | n : Ext | end Managen            | nent / onvif-confi            | 9                    |       |      |                                 |
| ONVIF dev          | ices    | ONVIF N                | rτ                            |                      |       |      |                                 |
| Enable             | ONVIF   |                        | pply                          |                      |       |      |                                 |

### 8.2 QINQ-config

Click the "Extended Manage >qinq-config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, as shown in the figure below.

|                   | C Apply |        |        |        |  |
|-------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--|
|                   | Port    | Mode   | ACTION | TPID   |  |
|                   | *       | •      | •      | •      |  |
|                   | ge1/1   | None 🗢 | None 🗢 | 0x8100 |  |
|                   | ge1/2   | None 🗢 | None 🗣 | 0x8100 |  |
| ONVIF-config      | ge1/3   | None 🗢 | None 🗢 | 0×8100 |  |
|                   | ge1/4   | None 🗢 | None 🗢 | 0x8100 |  |
| Time Range Config | ge1/5   | None 🗢 | None 🗢 | 0x8100 |  |
| Devices-config    | ge1/6   | None 🗢 | None 🔶 | 0x8100 |  |
| o VOIP-config     | ge1/7   | None 🗢 | None 🗢 | 0x8100 |  |
|                   | ge1/8   | None 🗢 | None 🗢 | 0x8100 |  |

### 8.3 TIME RANGE config

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



Configuration of effective time periods enables the user to make ACL setting of the message for time periods distinguish.

Time periods are used to describe a particular time range.Users may have requirements that some ACL rules need to be enforced at some time or other, and that they are not used for packet filtering during other time periods, commonly referred to as time period filtering. At this point, the user can configure one or more time periods and then reference that time period when the ACL rules are configured to implement time-based ACL filtering.

The configuration for time periods is as follows: configure period time periods and absolute time periods. The configuration cycle time period takes the form of the weekly days. Configuring absolute time periods takes the form of start time to end time Operation steps

Click the "Business manage > time range config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage 🛛 🗸                   |                          |                                        |        |  |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------|--|
| Business Manage 🛛 🗸 🗸                  | C Add Time               |                                        |        |  |
| Network-config 🗸 🗸 🗸                   | Name                     | Time                                   | handle |  |
| Network security 🗸 🗸 🗸 🗸 🗸 🗸 🗸         |                          |                                        |        |  |
| Extend Management                      |                          |                                        |        |  |
| o Time Range Config                    |                          |                                        |        |  |
| O Devices-config                       |                          |                                        |        |  |
| System maintenance 🛛 🗸                 |                          |                                        |        |  |
|                                        |                          |                                        |        |  |
|                                        |                          |                                        |        |  |
|                                        |                          |                                        |        |  |
| Add Time-Range                         |                          |                                        | ×      |  |
|                                        | ji .                     |                                        | ×      |  |
| Add Time-Range<br>Time-RangeName       |                          | O Absolute O Periodic                  | ×      |  |
|                                        | 上午 12:00 🛇               |                                        | ×      |  |
| Time-RangeName                         |                          |                                        | ×      |  |
| Time-RangeName<br>Start<br>End         | 上午 12:00 🛛               | 2018/01/01 🛇                           | ×      |  |
| Time-RangeName<br>Start                | 上午 12:00 ◎<br>上午 12:00 ◎ | 2018/01/01<br>2018/01/01               | ×      |  |
| Time-RangeName<br>Start<br>End<br>Time | 上午 12:00 ◎<br>上午 12:00 ◎ | 2018/01/01<br>2018/01/01<br>- 下午 11:00 | ×      |  |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | meaning                                                             |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Time-Range name    | Input Time-Range name, with optional absolute time & period time    |
| Absolute time      | Set the beginning time to end time, different absolute time segment |
|                    | can be set, or not set absolute time                                |
| Period time        | Set the day fo the week(Mon,TueSun), different period time          |
|                    | segment can be set, or not set period time.                         |

2. Fill corresponding configuration items.

3. Click "add", the interface is shown as the following figure:



| Name | Time                                         |        |
|------|----------------------------------------------|--------|
| work | Absolute 08:00 2018-01-01 - 18:00 2018-01-01 | Delete |

### 8.4 Devices config

To facilitate the user to view the device interface connected to the device related information.

Click the "Extended Manage >Devices Configuration" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, as shown in the figure below.

|                  | ~   | Current Positio | on : Extend Manageme | ant / Devices-con | iy                |              |                                 |
|------------------|-----|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
|                  | ~   | C               |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
|                  | ~   | Serial          | NumInterface         | Vid               | MAC               | IP           |                                 |
|                  | ~   | 1               | ge1/4                | 1                 | 08:57:00:ec:55:ec | 192.168.1.33 |                                 |
|                  | ~   | 2               | ge1/4                | 1                 | 20:26:23:24:52:70 | 192.168.1.1  |                                 |
| o ONVIF-config   |     |                 |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
| o QINQ-config    |     |                 |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
| o Time Range Con | fig |                 |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
|                  |     |                 |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
| o VOIP-config    |     |                 |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
|                  | ~   |                 |                      |                   |                   |              |                                 |
|                  |     | Jump            | OK                   |                   | << < 1            | > >>         | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |

### 8.5 VOIP-config

Click the "Extended Manage >VOIP-config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, as shown in the figure below.

| Interface Manage |      | Current Position: Extend Management / | VOIP-config |                   |        |                                 |
|------------------|------|---------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------|--------|---------------------------------|
|                  | ¥    | C Add                                 |             |                   |        |                                 |
|                  | ~    | SerialNum MAC                         | Mask        | Description       | handle |                                 |
|                  | ~    |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
|                  | ^    |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
| o ONVIF-config   |      |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
| o QINQ-config    |      |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
| o Time Range Cor | ıfig |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
| O Devices-config |      |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
|                  |      |                                       |             |                   |        |                                 |
|                  | ~    | Jump OK                               |             | « < <u>1</u> > »> |        | Total1Page , 20 entrys per page |



| AddVOIP     | ×                                      |
|-------------|----------------------------------------|
| MAC         | eg:00:01:02:03:04:05 or 0000-0000-0001 |
| Mask        | eg:ff:ff:f00:00:00                     |
| Description | eg:Cisco phone                         |
|             | Add Return                             |

# 9 system maintenance

### 9.1 Log config

### 1. Interface description

Function: Check the device log information(history record), upload device log to tftp server,

the interface is shown as the following figure:

|              | 1000 |                                                                                                                               |  |
|--------------|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
|              | ×    | Log-information                                                                                                               |  |
|              | ~    |                                                                                                                               |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 13:35:55 VTYSH: @console: EX                                                                                       |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 13:36:00 VTYSH: @console: E                                                                                        |  |
|              | ~    | 2020/01/01 13:36:02 VTYSH: @console: ex                                                                                       |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 13:36:02 VTYSH: @console: ex                                                                                       |  |
|              | ~    | 2020/01/01 13:36:25 WEB: admin login from 192.168.1.33                                                                        |  |
|              | 100  | 2020/01/01 13:47:16 WEB: admin@192.168.1.33: tm_periodic_config&name=11&stime=00:00&etime=23:00&week=0,1,1,1,1,1,0            |  |
| o Log Config |      | 2020/01/01 13:48:29 WEB: admin@192.168.1.33: tm_config&add=0kname=11                                                          |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 13:50:50 WEB: admin@192.168.1.33: mac_acl_id_config&add=1&id=1                                                     |  |
| o Diagnosis  |      | 2020/01/01 13:52:45 WEB: admin@192.168.1.33: ip_acl_id_config&add=1&id=100<br>2020/01/01 13:54:06 WEB: admin@192.168.1.33: 1: |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 15:54:06 SME: build error msg.err:Invalid parameter                                                                |  |
| o NTP Config |      | 2020/01/01 15:59:00 USA: Dulid_error_msg.err.invalid parameter<br>2020/01/01 15:59:00 WBE: admin@1922.168.1.35:100:           |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 13:54:06 GSR: build_error_msg.errinvalid_parameter                                                                 |  |
| o Reboot     |      | 2020/01/01 13:54:06 WEB: admin@1921.188.1.33: acl_group.config&port=gel/l,&acl_mac_id=1&acl_ip_id=100                         |  |
|              |      | 2020/01/01 14:17:46 WEB: admin@192.168.1.33: onvif dev_config@op=discovery                                                    |  |
| o Firmware   |      |                                                                                                                               |  |
|              |      |                                                                                                                               |  |

#### **2.Operation steps**

| Step 1 | Click the "System maintenance> log config" menu in the navigation tree to enter     |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | the interface, input the TFTP server address: e.g 192.169.1.125, file name "diary", |
|        | click "Upload".                                                                     |
| Step 2 | If it shall be used as start configuration, enter the "System manage>running        |
|        | config" for saving the settings.                                                    |

### 9.2 Reboot

#### **Operation steps**:

1. Click the "System maintenance> reboot" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "Reboot" interface, click "Reboot", The interface is shown as the following figure:

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



| Interface Manage   | ~ | Uuttent Position : System maintenance / Heccot |
|--------------------|---|------------------------------------------------|
| Business Manage    |   | Click this button, the device will restart!    |
| Route Manage       |   | ch                                             |
| Network security   |   | 0                                              |
| Extend Management  |   |                                                |
| System maintenance |   |                                                |
| o Log Config       |   |                                                |
| o Diagnosis        |   |                                                |
| o NTP Config       |   |                                                |
| o Reboot           |   |                                                |
| o Firmware         |   |                                                |

### 9.3 NTP config

Network Time Protocol (NTP) is an application layer Protocol in TCP/IP Protocol family. NTP is used to synchronize the clock between a series of distributed time servers and clients. The implementation of NTP is based on IP and UDP. NTP messages are transmitted through UDP, and the port number is 123. With the complexity of network topology, clock synchronization of devices in the whole network becomes very important. If you rely on the administrator to manually modify the system clock, not only lots of work to do, but also the accuracy of the clock can not be guaranteed. NTP is to solve the synchronization problem of the system clock in the network.

NTP basic principle: NTP implementation process as shown below. RouterA and RouterB are connected through the WAN, and both of them have their own independent system clocks, which can be automatically synchronized through NTP.

Make the following assumptions:

Before RouterA and RouterB's system clock synchronization, RouterA's clock was set to 10:00:00a.m. And RouterB's clock was set to 11:00:00a.m.

As an NTP time server, RouterB's clock is synchronized with RouterB's clock.

The time for one-way transmission between RouterA and RouterB is 1 second.

The time for both RouterA and RouterB process NTP messages is 1 second.



AVCOMM technologies Inc.



System clock setting:

RouterA sends NTP message to RouterB, this message includes the time mark that it leaves RouterA 10:00:00a.m. (T1)

When the NTP message reach RouterB, RouterB add the reach time mark 11:00:01a.m. (T2)

When the NTP message leaves RouterB, RouterB add the leave time mark 11:00:02a.m. (T3)

RouterA receives this response message, adds new time mark 10:00:03a.m. (T4)

After this, RouterA get enough information to calculate below data:

The delay time that NTP message leave and back in one period : Delay= ( T4 - T1 ) - ( T3 - T2 )\_{\circ}

Time difference for RouterA to RouterB : Offset= ( ( T2- T1 ) + ( T3 - T4 ) ) /  $2_{\circ}$ 

The delay time of RouterA after calculation is 2s, Offset is 1h. RouterA set its time according to this information, so as to synchronize with RouterB.

Explanation :

Above is the simple description of NTP, RFC1305 defines the calculation of NTP.

#### Operation steps

1. Click the "System manage >NTP config" menu in the navigation tree to enter the interface, the interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage                                                                      | V Cu   | ment Position : System        | maintenance / NTP Config |         |         |                                               |                |   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|---------|---------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|---|
|                                                                                       | ~      | NTP client config             | NTP server config        |         |         |                                               |                |   |
|                                                                                       | ~      | C Apply                       |                          |         |         |                                               |                |   |
|                                                                                       | ~      | Source                        | Reference                | Stratum | Offset  | Delay                                         | Dispersion     |   |
|                                                                                       | ~<br>~ | Clock status<br>Clock stratum | 0                        |         | Common  | China 202.108.6.95 20                         | 02.112.29.82   |   |
| <ul> <li>Log Config</li> <li>Diagnosis</li> <li>NTP Config</li> <li>Reboot</li> </ul> |        | Root dispersion               | 0.000000                 |         | Server: | TaiWan 120.119.28.1<br>America24.56.178.140 1 | 131.107.13.100 |   |
| O Firmware                                                                            | out    | Synchronization               | no                       |         |         |                                               |                |   |
| Current Position : Sys                                                                |        | nce / NTP Config              |                          |         |         |                                               |                |   |
| Apply                                                                                 |        |                               |                          |         |         |                                               |                | C |
| NTP server cor                                                                        | nfig   | Enable ntp                    | server                   |         |         |                                               |                |   |
| Local as maste                                                                        | er     | stratum 2                     |                          |         |         |                                               |                |   |

#### Explanations

| Configuration item | Meaning                          |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Mode               | Enable or disable NTP Auto clock |
| Interval           | Range: 5-65535 default: 300      |
| Server             | Max. support 5 server IP address |

### 9.4 Online Upgrading

#### **Operation steps**

AVCOMM technologies Inc.



Click the "System maintenance> firmware" menu in the navigation tree to enter the "Firmware" interface, click "choose file>upload", The interface is shown as the following figure:

| Interface Manage   | ~    | Current Position : System maintenance / Firmware |
|--------------------|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Business Manage    |      | Upgrade file path: 浏览 未选择文件。                     |
| Route Manage       |      | Upload                                           |
| Network security   |      |                                                  |
| Extend Management  |      |                                                  |
| System maintenance |      |                                                  |
| O Log Config       |      |                                                  |
| o Diagnosis        |      |                                                  |
| o NTP Config       |      |                                                  |
| O Reboot           |      |                                                  |
| O Firmware         |      |                                                  |
|                    |      |                                                  |
| admin I Loge       | out. | [mail_more_].                                    |

### 9.5 Diagnosis test 9.5.1 ping

#### 1. Interface description

PING is a command for checking the network connection and rate. The IP address is unique, one of the device will send a packet to the dest IP address, and request it to send back the same packet. With this, it can be confirmed that if these two devices are connecting, what the

| time | del | ay | 1S. |  |
|------|-----|----|-----|--|
|      |     |    |     |  |

| Interface Manage   | ~     | Current Position : System r | teintenence / Diegnosis      |
|--------------------|-------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Business Manage    | ~     | Cable Diag                  | This may take a few seconds. |
| Route Manage       | ~     |                             | Test                         |
| Network security   | ~     | PING                        | eg:192.168.1.1, 2000-1       |
| Extend Management  | ~     | FING                        |                              |
| System maintenance | ~     |                             | Test                         |
| o Log Config       |       | TRACEROUTE                  | eg:192.168.1.1, 2000:1       |
| o Diagnosis        |       |                             | Test                         |
| o NTP Config       |       |                             |                              |
| O Reboot           |       |                             |                              |
| o Firmware         |       |                             |                              |
| admin Log          | 20110 |                             |                              |

### 2. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "System config" menu in the navigation bar to enter the "System config" |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | interface, click "Diagnosis", input the IP address in "PING"                      |
| Step 2 | Click "test" to get the result.                                                   |

### 3. E.G.

#ping test IP address is 172.16.14.25

1) IP address input: 172.16.14.25, Click "test".

| ſ   | PING | 192.168.0.133 | eg:192.168.1.1, 2000::1 |          |
|-----|------|---------------|-------------------------|----------|
| AVI |      | Test          |                         | <br>7024 |



2) Test result is shown as the following figure:

| Ping                                                      |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--|
| PING 192.168.0.133 (192.168.0.133): 56 data bytes         |  |
| 64 bytes from 192.168.0.133: seg=0 ttl=128 time=0.545 ms  |  |
| 64 bytes from 192.168.0.133; seg=1 ttl=128 time=0.454 ms  |  |
| 64 bytes from 192.168.0.133; seg=2 ttl=128 time=0.524 ms  |  |
| 64 bytes from 192.168.0.133: seq=3 ttl=128 time=0.490 ms  |  |
| 192.168.0.133 ping statistics                             |  |
| 4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss |  |
| round-trip min/avg/max = 0.454/0.503/0.545 ms             |  |

### 9.5.2 Traceroute

#### 1. Interface description

Traceroute test how long time by sending a small data packet to target device until the data packet are back from the target device. Port circuit includes PHY layer circuit & MAC circuit. The interface is shown as the following figure:

| TRACEROUTE |      | eg:192.168.1.1, 2000::1 |  |
|------------|------|-------------------------|--|
|            | Test |                         |  |

#### 2. Operation steps

| Step 1 | Click the "Diagnosis" menu in the navigation bar to enter the interface, click |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | "traceroute", input the IP address.                                            |
| Step 2 | Click "test" to get the result.                                                |